



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

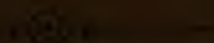
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT  
1918.87  
435

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR



GILBERT

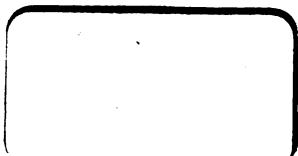
EducT 1918. 87.435



**Harvard College Library**

FROM

**Prof. Ephraim Emerton**



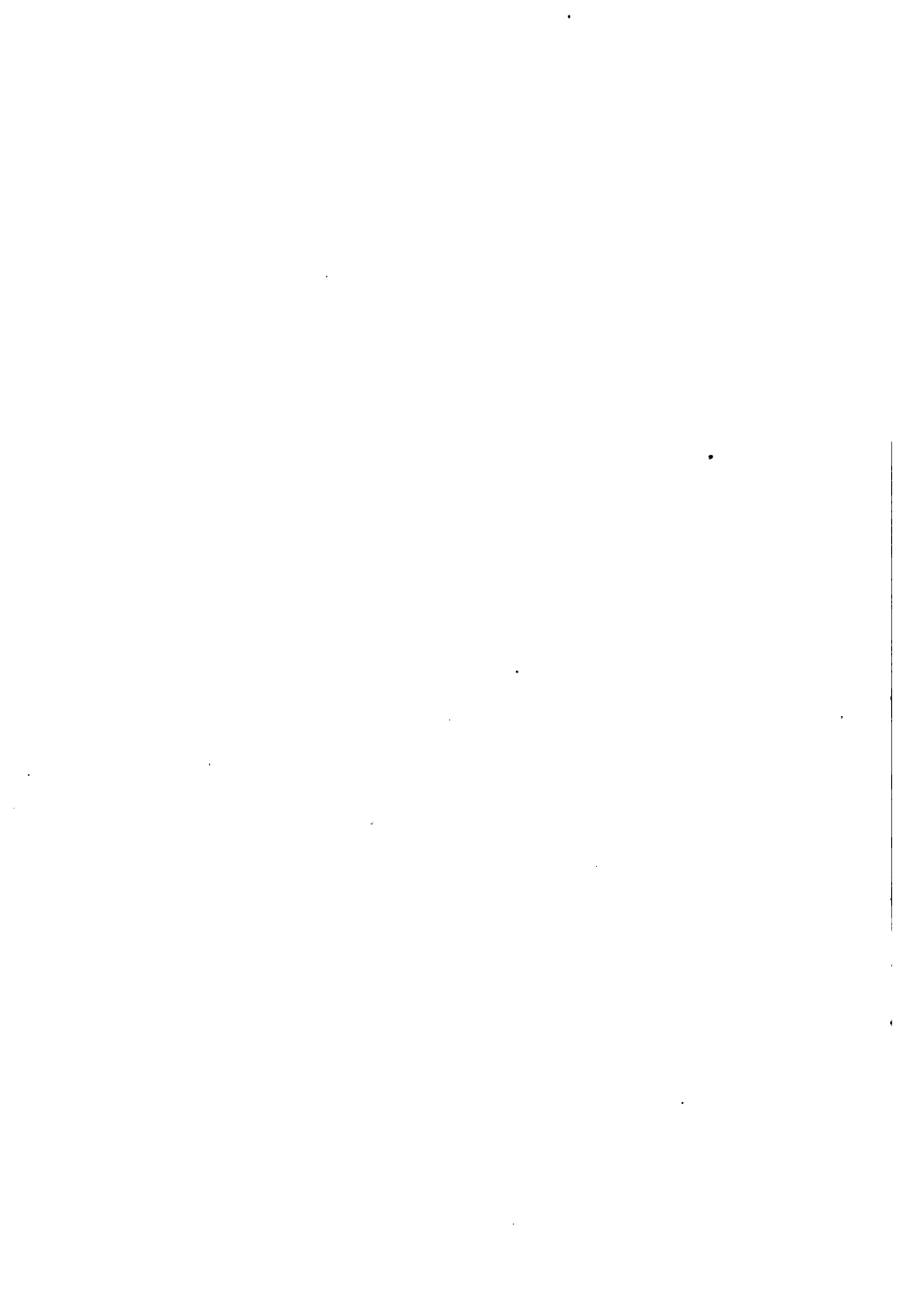
C. D. Winters

1960-1961

Winters, C. D.



3 2044 102 868 817



# ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

BY

C. H. GRANDGENT,

TUTOR IN MODERN LANGUAGES IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

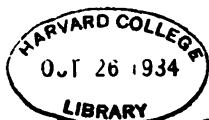


BOSTON:

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS,

1887.

177.87.4-35



*Prof. Ephraim Emerson*

*Copyright, 1887,*

By C. H. GRANDGENT.

---

ELECTROTYPED BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON.

## PREFACE.

---

THIS volume is the result of an attempt to put into convenient form and the smallest possible compass all the grammar that the ordinary student of Italian will need. Short as the book is, it contains some paragraphs which beginners will probably skip: the longer lists of words and endings, and a great part of the chapters on suffixes and irregular verbs will be useful mainly for reference. The vocabularies cover the twenty-one translation exercises, but not the examples nor the Exercise in Pronunciation; they are not intended to include words explained in the notes, nor proper names that are exactly the same in Italian and in English.

I have endeavored to make the book represent the Italian language as it is spoken and written at the present day; the exercises are taken chiefly from reading-books lately prepared for Tuscan schools. Still, I have tried to give also as many obsolete forms as students of the Italian classics will require.

It has been my aim throughout to make the rules clear for all classes of pupils, even for those ignorant of other foreign languages, provided they understand the technical words commonly used in grammars. With this object in view, I have ascribed to the Italian vowels the pronunciation of the English ones that are most like them: an accurate description of the Italian sounds would, I fear, prove confusing to beginners who have had no training in phonetics. It will be easy for the instructor to explain not only



the vowels, but some of the consonants, and the division of words into syllables, much better than can be done in a book like this.

The authorities I have consulted most are the dictionaries of Fanfani, Rigutini and Fanfani, Fornari (*Nuovo Bazzarini*), and Tommaseo and Bellini. I have made but little use of other grammars; I am, however, indebted to Toscani for some ideas and a few of my examples. The chapters on syntax, and the treatment of irregular verbs, pronouns, suffixes, and the plural of words in *-co* and *-go* are almost entirely the result of original work.

In conclusion, I wish to express my gratitude to Professor Nash, of Harvard, to my friend and teacher, Sig. Filippo Orlando, of Florence, and to the gentlemen who assisted me in correcting the proof-sheets; and I wish above all to thank Professor Sheldon, of Harvard, and Professor Bendelari, of Yale, without whose aid and encouragement I should scarcely have ventured to offer this book to the public.

CAMBRIDGE, September, 1887.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

|   | PAGE  |
|---|-------|
| PRONUNCIATION .....   | 1-7   |
| <i>Exercise in Pronunciation</i> .....                      | 6-7   |
| ARTICLES .....  | 7-11  |
| The Definite Article .....                                  | 7-10  |
| The Indefinite Article .....                                | 10    |
| <i>Exercises 1, 2</i> .....                                 | 11    |
| NOUNS .....   | 11-17 |
| Gender .....  | 12-13 |
| Number .....  | 13-16 |
| <i>Exercises 3, 4</i> .....                                 | 16-17 |
| ADJECTIVES .....  | 18-23 |
| Gender and Number .....                                     | 18-20 |
| Comparison .....  | 20-22 |
| <i>Exercises 5, 6</i> .....                                 | 22-23 |
| AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES ; NUMERALS .....              | 23-29 |
| Augmentative and Diminutive Endings .....                   | 23-25 |
| Numerals .....  | 25-28 |
| <i>Exercises 7, 8</i> .....                                 | 28-29 |
| DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRO- |       |
| NOUNS .....   | 30-35 |
| Demonstrative Pronouns .....                                | 30-31 |
| Interrogative Pronouns .....                                | 31    |
| Relative Pronouns .....                                     | 31-33 |
| Possessive Pronouns .....                                   | 33-34 |
| <i>Exercises 9, 10</i> .....                                | 35    |
| PERSONAL PRONOUNS .....                                     | 36-46 |
| Conjunctive Forms .....                                     | 36-40 |

|  | PAGE  |
|--|-------|
| Disjunctive Forms .....  | 40-42 |
| Forms of Address .....   | 43-44 |
| <i>Exercises 11, 12</i> .....                                    | 44-46 |
| AUXILIARY VERBS .....  | 47-55 |
| Auxiliaries of Voice and Tense .....                             | 47-53 |
| <i>Êssere</i> .....  | 47    |
| <i>Avère</i> .....   | 48    |
| Modal Auxiliaries .....  | 53-54 |
| <i>Exercises 13, 14</i> .....                                    | 54-55 |
| REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS .....                                | 55-65 |
| The Regular Verb .....   | 56-59 |
| First Conjugation .....  | 56-57 |
| Second and Third Conjugations .....                              | 57-58 |
| Fourth Conjugation .....   | 58-59 |
| The Irregular Verb .....   | 60-63 |
| <i>Póire</i> .....   | 60-61 |
| <i>Exercises 15, 16</i> .....                                    | 63-65 |
| MOODS AND TENSES .....   | 65-74 |
| Infinitive and Participle .....                                  | 65-68 |
| Past, Present, and Future .....                                  | 68-69 |
| Conditional .....  | 69    |
| Subjunctive .....  | 69-72 |
| <i>Exercises 17, 18</i> .....                                    | 72-74 |
| CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS, AND ADVERBS .....                    | 74-84 |
| Conjunctions .....   | 74-76 |
| Prepositions .....   | 76-80 |
| Adverbs .....  | 80-82 |
| <i>Exercises 19, 20</i> .....                                    | 83-84 |
| INDEFINITE PRONOUNS .....  | 84-87 |
| <i>Exercise 21</i> .....   | 87    |
| LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS ARRANGED ACCORDING TO CONJUGATION, ..... | 88-99 |
| First Conjugation .....  | 88-89 |
| Second Conjugation .....   | 89-92 |

# CONTENTS.

vii

|  | PAGE    |
|--|---------|
| Third Conjugation .....                                  | 92-97   |
| First Class: -si, -so .....                              | 92-94   |
| Second Class: -si, -to .....                             | 94-95   |
| Third Class: -ssi, -sso .....                            | 95-96   |
| Fourth Class: -ssi, -tto .....                           | 96-97   |
| Not Classified .....                                     | 97      |
| Fourth Conjugation .....                                 | 97-99   |
| ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS ..... | 100-104 |
| ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY .....                         | 105-112 |
| ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY .....                         | 113-119 |
| INDEX .....  | 121-124 |



# ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

---

## PRONUNCIATION.

1. In Italian all the letters are pronounced, except *h*, which is always silent. *B, f, g, l, m, n, p, q, s,* and *v* are pronounced as in English. The letters of the Italian alphabet are named as follows :—

|                  |                     |                  |                    |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| A, <i>ah.</i>    | G, <i>jē.</i>       | N, <i>én-ně.</i> | T, <i>tē.</i>      |
| B, <i>bē.</i>    | H, <i>dk-kah.</i>   | O, <i>ō.</i>     | U, <i>oo.</i>      |
| C, <i>chē.</i>   | I, <i>ī.</i>        | P, <i>pē.</i>    | V, <i>vē.</i>      |
| D, <i>dē.</i>    | J, <i>z loongo.</i> | Q, <i>coo.</i>   | Z, <i>dsě-tah.</i> |
| E, <i>ā.</i>     | L, <i>él-lē.</i>    | R, <i>ér-rě.</i> |                    |
| F, <i>éf-fē.</i> | M, <i>ém-mě.</i>    | S, <i>és-sě.</i> |                    |

In the italicized words above, the letters and signs have their English values; the accented syllable is marked by an acute accent (').

2. **A** is always pronounced like *a* in English "father": as *fāma*, "fame."

**I** is always pronounced like *e* in "he": as *vīni*, "wines."

**U** always has the sound of *oo* in "moon": as *ūna*, "one."

Even when these vowels are short their quality remains unchanged: as *pālla*, "ball"; *spīlli*, "pins"; *nūlla*, "nothing."

*a.* In the groups *cia, cio, ciu, gia, gio, giu*, the *i*, unless it be accented, is generally not pronounced; it is merely a graphic sign, denoting that the *c* or the *g* is soft. Soft *c* is like English *ch* in "chin"; soft *g* is like *g* in "gem." Ex.: *ciò*, "that"; *guancia*, "cheek"; *mangia*, "he eats"; *giù*, "down."

**3.** *E* has two sounds: one close, like *a* in "gate," one open, like *e* in "get." Unaccented *e* is always close. The cases where accented *e* is open and those where it is close must be learned by practice;\* but in the group *ie* it is always open. In this book an acute accent (') marks the close, and a circumflex (^) the open sound; these accents are, however, not used in writing Italian. Ex.: *spésso*, "often"; *védo*, "I see"; *ebbe*, "he had"; *viéne*, "he comes."

*O* has also two sounds: one close, like *o* in "note," one open, like *o* in "for."† Unaccented *o* is always close. In the group *uo*, accented *o* is always open. Ex.: *pómo*, "fruit"; *mólto*, "much"; *póco*, "little"; *fuóco*, "fire."

*a.* The groups *ie* and *uo* nearly always form but one syllable each, the accent being on the *e* and the *o*: as *piéno*, "full"; *buóno*, "good."

*b.* In the suffixes *-eccio (-a)*, *-esco (-a)*, *-ese*, *-essa*, *-etto (-a)*, *-ezzo (-a)*, *-mente*, and *-mento* the *e* is always close; while in the diminutive suffix *-ello (-a)*, and in the endings *-ente*, *-enza*, *-erio* (or *-ero*), and *-esimo (-a)* it is open: as *inglése*, "English"; *probabilménte*, "probably"; *prudénte*, "prudent"; *ventésimo*, "twentieth."

\* Italian *e* is close when it represents Latin *ē* or *ĭ*; open when it represents Latin *ē* or *ae*. This rule has very few exceptions.

† Italian *o* is close when it represents Latin *ō* or *ū*; open when it represents Latin *ō* or *au*.

*c*. In the endings *-oio*, *-one*, *-ore*, and in the suffix *-oso* (*-a*) the *o* is close; while in the ending *-orio*, and in *-occio* (*-a*), *-otto* (*-a*), and *-ozzo* (*-a*), used as suffixes to nouns or adjectives, it is open: as *vassóio*, "tray"; *amóre*, "love"; *romitório*, "hermitage"; *casótta*, "good-sized house."

*d*. In poetry and in some prose *o* is often used instead of *uo*; this *o* is always open: as *córe* (for *cuore*), "heart."

**4. C** before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant is pronounced like English *k*: as *cása*, "house." Before *e* or *i* it has the value of *ch* in "chin":\* as *dólce*, "sweet"; *cinque*, "five."

When double *c* precedes *e* or *i*, both *c*'s are soft: as *faccia*, "face."

**G** before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant is pronounced as in English: as *gátto*, "cat." Before *e* or *i* it has the value of *g* in "gem":\* as *gênte*, "people"; *giórno*, "day."

When double *g* precedes *e* or *i*, both *g*'s are soft: as *raggio*, "ray."

**H** is always silent: as *ha*, "he has."

**J** is merely another way of writing *i* or *ii*.

**R** is always rolled: as *cárne*, "meat"; *rósso*, "red"; *per*, "for." When *r* is double, the trill is prolonged: as *búrro*, "butter"; *marróne*, "chestnut."

**S** is generally like English *s* in "see," "mason": as *só*, "I know"; *cása*, "house"; *diségno*, "design." But a single *s* between two vowels is very often sounded like English *z*: as *cáso*, "case"; *disonóre*, "dishonor."

---

\* Between two vowels, of which the second is *e* or *i*, single *c* and single *g* are, in Tuscany, pronounced respectively like *sh* in "shin," and like *si* in "vision" (French *g* in *page*): as *páce*, "peace"; *stagíone*, "season."



In the suffixes *-ése* and *-ésimo* the *s* is sounded *z*; in the suffix *-oso* it is like *s* in "mason"; as *francése*, "French"; *noioso*, "troublesome."

Initial *s*, followed by *b*, *d*, *g*, *l*, *m*, *n*, or *v*, is pronounced *z*: as *sdrucchiolare*, "to slip"; *slitta*, "sleigh."

**T** and **d** are pronounced further forward in the mouth than in English; the tip of the tongue should touch the back of the upper front teeth: as *tu*, "thou"; *fede*, "faith."

**Z** is sounded like *ts*: as *alzare*, "to lift." After *n*, however, *z* is, in many words, pronounced *dz*: as *manzo*, "beef"; *zanzara*, "mosquito." At the beginning of a word *z* always has the sound of *dz* (as *zinc*), except in *zampa*, *zia*, *zio*, *zitto*, *zolfo*, *zoppo*, *zucca*, *zucchero*, *zuppa*, and some other words that are but little used.\*

**Zz** is sometimes *tts*, sometimes *dds*:† as *prezzo* (*tts*), "price"; *mezzo* (*dds*), "half."

\* The complete list is:—

|            |          |          |           |          |
|------------|----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| zabattiero | zana     | zazzera  | zingaro   | zalfa    |
| zaccagna   | zanca    | zécca    | zinghinia | zolfo    |
| zaccaro    | zangola  | zéppa    | zinzino   | zombare  |
| zacchera   | zanna    | zéppo    | zio       | zoppo    |
| zaffo      | zanni    | zighena  | zipolo    | zucca    |
| zambuco    | zanza    | zigolo   | zitello   | zucchero |
| zampa      | zappa    | zimár    | zitto     | zuffa    |
| zampillo   | zatta    | zimbello | zivolo    | zufolo   |
| zampogna   | zazzeare | zinfonia | zocco     | zuppa    |

and their derivatives.

† In general *ss* is *tts* when it comes from Latin *ti*, *dds* when it comes from Latin *di*: as *pretium* = *prezzo*; *medium* = *mezzo*.

In the suffixes *-dzzo* (-a), *-tzzo* (-a), *-lzzo* (-a), *-bzzo* (-a), and *-uzzo* (-a) the *zz* is sounded *ts*, but in the verbal ending *-izzàre* it is *dz*: as *chiarézza*, "clearness"; *utilizzàre*, "to utilize."

The other consonants are pronounced as in English.

5. The following combinations are to be noted:—

**Ch** (which is used only before *e* and *i*) is always like English *k*: as *fichi*, "figs." **Sch** is like *sk*: as *schérzo*, "sport."

**Gh** (which is used only before *e* and *i*) is always like English *g* in "get": as *dghi*, "needles."

**Gl** (written *gl* if the following vowel be *i*) is like English *li* in "million": \* as *figlio*, "son"; *figli*, "sons."

**Gn** is like *ni* in "onion": as *bisógno*, "need."

**Gu** followed by a vowel is like *gw*: as *guancia*, "cheek."

**Qu** is always like *kw*: as *quésto*, "this."

**So** before *e* and *i* is like *sh* in "shin": as *uscire*, "to go out." Before all other letters it is pronounced *sk*: as *scuola*, "school."

6. With the exception of *h* and of the combinations mentioned in 5 and in 2, a, every letter in Italian is distinctly sounded. In pronouncing double consonants both letters must be sounded—the first at the end of the preceding, the second at the beginning of the following syllable. Ex.: *paura* (*pa-ú-ra*), "fear"; *Europa* (*E-u-rò-pa*), "Europe"; *miei* (*mil-i*), "my"; *babbo* (*báb-bo*), "papa"; *fatto* (*fát-to*), "done"; *anno* (*dn-no*), "year"; *faccia* (pronounce *fat-tsha*), "face"; *oggi* (pronounce *od-dgž*), "to-day"; *pazzo* (pronounce *pat-tso*), "mad."

---

\* Exceptions are *negligere*, and a few uncommon words borrowed from the Latin; in these *gl* = English *gl*.

7. In writing Italian only one accent, the grave (`), is employed.\* Any vowel bearing this mark is accented and (if it be *e* or *o*) open in the pronunciation. When, as is the case with nearly all words, no accent is written, the emphasized syllable must be learned by practice.† Most nouns and adjectives are accented on the penult. In this book the accent will always be marked.

8. Italian words are divided into syllables in such a way that, if possible, every syllable begins with a consonant: as *ta-vo-lí-no*, "table." When *s* precedes another consonant, both that consonant and the *s* belong to the following syllable: as *dí-stán-te*, "distant"; *ri-strét-to*, "limited." When *r* follows another consonant, both that consonant and the *r* belong to the following syllable: as *pá-dre*, "father"; *a-vrò*, "I shall have." Ex.: *mi-gliò-re*, "better"; *o-gnù-no*, "every"; *ri-spón-de-re*, "to reply"; *te-á-tro*, "theatre"; *del-l' ác-qua*, "of the water."

#### EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION.

Carlíno è maláto, è mólto maláto. Lì da lui al súo letticiuòlo,  
*Charley is ill is very ill There by him at(the) his little-bed*

c' è sêmpre la mámma. La mámma è sêmpre lì, è sêmpre lì  
*there is always the mother The mother is always there is always there*  
 giòrno e nòtte. È òtto giòrni che non si è spogliáta; quándo  
*day and night It-is eight days that not she-has-undressed when*  
 non ne può piú, appòggia il cápo accánto al visíno del  
*she-cannot (-hold-out) more she-leans the head beside (to)the little-face of (the)*  
 súo Carlíno, e s' appísola un pôco: ma dormíre, ah! dormíre non  
*her Charley and drowzes a little but sleep ah sleep not*

---

\* Some Italian authors and editors use the acute and circumflex accents to mark proparoxytones, and to distinguish words that are alike in spelling but different in meaning; but their example is not generally followed.

† The accent is nearly always the same as in Latin.

può. Che se Carlino tósse, se álza úna manína, se respira un  
*she-can For if Charley coughs if he-raises a little-hand if he-breathes a*  
 po' più fòrte, la mámma è súbito alzáta, e lo guárda fisso  
*little more hard the mother is at-once arisen and him looks-at hard*  
 fisso, e lo bácia. Il malatíno patísce, ma patísce più la pòvera  
*hard and him kisses The little-invalid suffers but suffers more the poor*  
 mámma.  
*mother.*

---

## ARTICLES.

9. The article is not declined, but it agrees with its substantive in gender and number.

## THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

## 10. Masculine :—

*a.* Sing. *il*, pl. *i*, before a word beginning with any consonant except *s* impure\* and *z*.

*b.* Sing. *lo*, pl. *gli*, before a word beginning with a vowel or with *s* impure or *z*.

Before a vowel *lo* becomes *l'*.

Ex. : *Il pádre*, the father ; *i pádri*, the fathers.

*Lo spécchio*, the mirror ; *gli spécchi*, the mirrors.

*Lo sciáme*, the swarm ; *gli sciámi*, the swarms.

*Lo zio*, the uncle ; *gli zii*, the uncles.

*L' uòmo*, the man ; *gli uòmini*, the men.

## 11. Feminine :—

Sing. *la*, pl. *le*.

Before a vowel *la* becomes *l'* ; *le* becomes *l'* before *e*.

Ex. : *La mádre*, the mother ; *le mádri*, the mothers.

*L' óra*, the hour ; *le óre*, the hours ; *l' érbe*, the herbs.

---

\* That is, *s* followed by another consonant.

**12.** When the definite article is preceded by one of the prepositions *di, da, a, in, con, su, per*, the article and preposition are contracted into one word, as shown in the following table :—

|                  | IL         | I                 | LO            | GLI            | LA            | LE            | L'            |
|------------------|------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Di, of</i>    | <i>del</i> | <i>déi or de'</i> | <i>déllo</i>  | <i>dégli</i>   | <i>dèlla</i>  | <i>dèlle</i>  | <i>dell'</i>  |
| <i>Da, by</i>    | <i>dal</i> | <i>dái or da'</i> | <i>dállo</i>  | <i>dágli</i>   | <i>dàlla</i>  | <i>dàlle</i>  | <i>dall'</i>  |
| <i>A, to</i>     | <i>al</i>  | <i>dí or a'</i>   | <i>dílo</i>   | <i>dígli</i>   | <i>dílla</i>  | <i>dílle</i>  | <i>all'</i>   |
| <i>In, in</i>    | <i>nel</i> | <i>néi or ne'</i> | <i>néllo</i>  | <i>négli</i>   | <i>nèlla</i>  | <i>nèlle</i>  | <i>nell'</i>  |
| <i>Con, with</i> | <i>col</i> | <i>cói or co'</i> | <i>cóllo</i>  | <i>cógli</i>   | <i>cólla</i>  | <i>cólle</i>  | <i>coll'</i>  |
| <i>Su, on</i>    | <i>sul</i> | <i>súi or su'</i> | <i>súllo</i>  | <i>súgli</i>   | <i>súlla</i>  | <i>súlle</i>  | <i>sull'</i>  |
| <i>Per, for</i>  | <i>pel</i> | <i>péi or pe'</i> | <i>per lo</i> | <i>per gli</i> | <i>per la</i> | <i>per le</i> | <i>per l'</i> |

Ex. : *Del pádre*, of the father ; *dái pádri*, by the fathers.

*Állo spéccchio*, to the mirror ; *négli spéccchi*, in the mirrors.

*Cólla mádre*, with the mother ; *cólle mádri*, with the mothers.

*Sull' uòmo*, on the man ; *per gli uòmini*, for the men.

*a.* The word "some" is frequently rendered in Italian by *dí* with the definite article. This is called the partitive genitive.

Ex. : *Dátemi del víno*, give me some wine.

**13.** In the following cases the definite article is used in Italian, though not in English :—

*a.* Before the possessive pronouns : as *il nòstro giardíno*, "our garden" ; *i súi fratèlli*, "his brothers." When, however, the possessive qualifies a noun in the singular expressing relationship, the article is generally omitted : as *mía mádre*, "my mother."

*b.* Before an abstract noun or any noun taken in a general sense.

Ex. : *L' uòmo propòne*, man proposes.

*I fióri nàscono dal sème*, flowers spring from the seed.

*Gli uccèlli hánno le áli*, birds have wings.

*La mòrte è il peggióre di tútti i máli*, death is the worst of all evils.

c. In general before a noun used with any adjective that does not express quantity.

Ex. : *L' áнно scórso*, last year.

*Gli uòmini buòni*, good men.

*Il pòvero Gidrgio non viéne*, poor George doesn't come.

d. Before a title followed by a proper name.

Ex. : *La regína Vittòria*, Queen Victoria.

*Il signór Àscoli*, Mr. Ascoli.

e. Generally before family names, and before names of well-known persons.

Ex. : *Il Biánchi è mòrto*, White is dead ; *la Pátti cànta*, Patti sings.

*Il poéma del Dánte* or *di Dánte*, Dante's poem.

f. (1) Before names of countries and continents.

Ex. : *La Svizzerà*, Switzerland ; *all' Itàlia*, to Italy.

*Parlo della Rússia*, I speak of Russia.

*Per l' Euròpa*, for Europe.

(2) But the article is omitted after *in*, in phrases that denote going to or dwelling in a country.

Ex. : *Vádo in Germánia*, I go to Germany.

*Rimángo in Fráncia*, I remain in France.

(3) It is omitted also after *di*, when *di* with the name of a country is equivalent to an adjective of nationality.

Ex. : *La regína d' Inghiltèrra*, the queen of England.

*Il víno di Spáña*, the wine of Spain.

In all the above cases the article is omitted if the noun is used as a vocative, or is modified by a numeral or a pronoun.

Ex.: *Signóra Mònti, còme sta*, Mrs. Monti, how do you do?  
*Pòvero pàdre*, poor father!  
*Dúe bellíssimi càni*, two very beautiful dogs.  
*Qúesta súa òpera*, this work of his.

### THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

#### 14. Masculine :—

- a. *Un* before a vowel or any consonant except *s* impure and *z*.
- b. *Úno* before *s* impure or *z*.

Ex.: *Un pàdre*, a father.  
*Un uòmo*, a man.  
*Un anèllo*, a ring.  
*Úno spècchio*, a mirror.  
*Úno sciàme*, a swarm.  
*Úno zio*, an uncle.

#### 15. Feminine :—

*Úna*, which becomes *un'* before a vowel.

Ex.: *Úna mādre*, a mother.  
*Un' òra*, an hour.

16. In the following cases the indefinite article, though expressed in English, is omitted in Italian :—

a. Before a predicate noun expressing profession, rank, or nationality, and not accompanied by an adjective.

Ex.: *Égli è poetà*, he is a poet.  
*Sòno marchése*, I am a marquis.  
*Sìtte italiàno*, you are an Italian.

b. Before a noun used in apposition to a preceding substantive.

Ex.: *L' Àrno, fiúme che traversa Firténze*, the Arno, a river which traverses Florence.

## EXERCISE I.

La pártē piú álta del nòstro còrpo è il cápo. Il cápo è attaccáto  
*highest is is attached*  
 al còllo, e il còllo è attaccáto al trónco. La pártē davánti del  
*front*  
 cápo si chiáma víso. Nel víso ci sòno la frònte, gli òcchi, il  
*is-called there are eyes*  
 náso, la bócca, il ménto. Cógli òcchi si védono le còse. Col  
*we-see things*  
 náso si sèntono gli odóri. Còlla bócca si mángia, si béve, si  
*we-smell odors we-eat we-drink we-*  
 respíra. Respiráre è mandáre l' ária giù nel pètto, e pòi riman-  
*breaths*  
 dárta fuòri. Nói respiriámo l' ária. Leváte un pèsce dall' ácqua,  
*it We breathe Take*  
 muòre: leváte l' ária a nói, e nói morrémo.  
*it-dies take from us shall-die.*

## EXERCISE 2.

Mr. Rossi is a merchant. Leaving Italy, he-went-away last  
*è Lasciando partì*  
 year to France, a country which he-wished to-visit with his brother  
*per voléva visitàre*  
 and a friend of the family. But he-returned to Italy the same  
*tornò in*  
 month, saying: "Travelling<sup>1</sup> bores-me. Another time I-shall-make  
*dicèndo viaggiàre (m.) mi sècca áltra farò*  
 a study of the customs of France. Paris is a big city; we-have-  
*costúmi (m. pl.) gránde vi abbiamo*  
 seen some<sup>2</sup> fine things; but I-prefer the land of Garibaldi and  
*vedúto bèle còse (f. pl.) mi piàce piú*  
 of King Victor Emmanuel."

<sup>1</sup> See 13, b.<sup>2</sup> See 12, a.

## NOUNS.

17. Italian nouns are not declined. Possession is denoted by the preposition *di*: as *lo spècchio di mío pádre*, "my father's looking-glass."



## GENDER.

## 18. There are no neuter nouns in Italian.\*

Nouns denoting males and females keep their natural gender, whatever their termination may be: except *guida*, "guide"; *guardia*, "guard"; *sentinella*, "sentinel"; *spla*, "spy"; which are feminine.

Ex.: *Il fratello*, the brother; *mia sorella*, my sister.

*Il poeta*, the poet; *la poetessa*, the poetess.

*Una spla*, a spy; *la nostra guida*, our guide.

19. Of nouns denoting objects without sex some are masculine, some feminine. Their gender can often be determined by the final letter. All Italian nouns end in *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*: † —

*a*. Those ending in *a* are feminine; except *colèra*, "cholera," Greek neuters in *-ma*, ‡ many geographical names, and a few other words, mostly foreign.

Ex.: *Un' ora*, an hour; *un telegramma*, a telegram.

*Il Canadà*, Canada; *il sofà*, the sofa.

*b*. Of those ending in *e* and *i* some are masculine, some feminine. All ending in *-zione*, *-gione*, or *-idine* are feminine; those in *-me* are generally masculine; those in unaccented *i* are mostly feminine.

Ex.: *Il fiume*, the river; *la pace*, peace.

*Un dì*, a day; *una metropoli*, a metropolis.

*La ragione*, the reason; *la servitùdine*, service.

\* Latin neuters become masculine in Italian; masculines and feminines retain their Latin gender. This rule has very few exceptions.

† A few foreign nouns used in Italian end in a consonant: as *lapis*, "pencil."

‡ Mostly scientific terms.

c. Those ending in *o* are masculine ; except *máno*, "hand."

Ex. : *Il ginòcchio*, the knee ; *la máno*, the hand.

d. Those ending in *u* are feminine ; except *soprappiù*, "surplus," and a few foreign words.

Ex. : *La virtù*, virtue ; *il bambù*, bamboo.

**20.** Any other part of speech (except an adjective) used as a noun must be masculine.

Ex. : *Il viaggiàre*, travelling.

**21.** Masculine names of trees in *o* or *e* have a feminine form in *a* or *e* respectively, denoting their fruit ; but *il dáttero*, "date," *il fico*, "fig," *il limóne*, "lemon," *il pómo*, "apple," are always the same, whether denoting the tree or the fruit.

Ex. : *Un sustno*, a plum-tree ; *una sustna*, a plum.

*Il nóce*, the walnut-tree ; *la nóce*, the walnut.

*Qudsti fichi*, these fig-trees, these figs.

## NUMBER.

**22.** Feminines in unaccented *a* form their plural by changing *a* into *e*.

Ex. : *La stráda*, the street ; *le stráde*, the streets.

*Una bugla*, a lie ; *le bugle*, lies.

*a.* Feminines in *-ca* and *-ga* form their plural in *-che* and *-ghe* respectively (the *h* being inserted merely to indicate that the *c* and *g* keep their hard sound).

Ex. : *Un' óca*, a goose ; *mólte óche*, many geese.

*La bottéga*, the shop ; *parécchie bottéghe*, several shops.

*b.* Nouns in unaccented *-cia* and *-gia* form their plural in *-ce* and *-ge* respectively.\*

Ex.: *La guancia*, the cheek; *le guance*, the cheeks.  
*Una ciliegia*, a cherry; *tante ciliege*, so many cherries.

**23.** Masculines in unaccented *a* and all nouns in unaccented *o* and *e* (not *ie*) form their plural in *i*.

Ex.: *Un poeta*, a poet; *due poeti*, two poets.  
*Lo zio*, the uncle; *gli zii*, the uncles.  
*La mano*, the hand; *le mie mani*, my hands.  
*Un mese*, a month; *tre mesi*, three months.  
*La cornice*, the frame; *quattro cornici*, four frames.

*a.* Masculines in *-ca* and *-ga* form their plural in *-chi* and *-ghi* respectively.

Ex.: *Il monarca*, the monarch; *i monarchi*, the monarchs.  
*Il collega*, the colleague; *i colleghi*, the colleagues.

*b.* Nouns in unaccented *-io* form their plural by changing *-io* to *-i* (often written *ii* or *j*).

Ex.: *Lo specchio*, the mirror; *gli specchi*, the mirrors.  
*Il ciliegio*, the cherry-tree; *i ciliegi*, the cherry-trees.

*c.* Nouns in *-go* form their plural in *-ghi*. Nouns in *-co* form their plural in *-chi* if the penult is accented, otherwise in *-ci*.

Ex.: *Il castigo*, the punishment; *i castighi*, the punishments.  
*Un catalogo*, a catalogue; *due cataloghi*, two catalogues.  
*Il fico*, the fig; *cinque fichi*, five figs.  
*Antico*, ancient; *gli antichi*, the ancients.  
*Un medico*, a doctor; *sei medici*, six doctors.

This rule has a number of exceptions. In the following lists, words whose irregular plural is rare are omitted.

---

\* A few nouns in unaccented *-cia* and *-gia* retain the *i* in the plural: as *allergia* (*allergie*), *audacia* (*-cie*), *cupidigia* (*-gie*), *fallacia* (*-cie*), *ferocia* (*-cie*), *provincia* (*-cie*).

(1) When *mágo*, "magician," means "one of the Magi," its plural is *mági*; otherwise it is *mághi*. Compound nouns in *-logo* denoting persons engaged in the sciences form their plural in *-gi*. Compound nouns in *-fago* form their plural in *-gi*.\*

Ex. : *Il fisiologo*, the physiologist; *i fisiologi*, physiologists.  
*Antropófago*, cannibal; *antropófagi*, cannibals.

(2) The following words form their plural in *-ci*, although the penult is accented : —

|       |       |         |        |         |
|-------|-------|---------|--------|---------|
| amíco | grêco | inimíco | nemíco | pôrco † |
|-------|-------|---------|--------|---------|

*Grêco* has a regular plural in the expression *viní grêchi*.

(3) The following words form their plural in *-chi*, although the penult is unaccented : —

|             |            |          |           |           |
|-------------|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| ábbaco      | fármaco    | lástrico | rammárico | stráscico |
| acròstico   | índaco     | mánico   | rísico    | tòssico   |
| cárico †    | intónaco   | párroco  | sciático  | tráfíco   |
| diméntico † | intrínseco | pízzico  | stômaco   | válico §  |

*Acròstico* and *fármaco* have also regular plurals.

d. Some masculines in *o* have an irregular plural in *a*; this plural is feminine. They are : *centináio*, "hundred"; *migliáio*, "thousand"; *miglio*, "mile"; *páio*, "pair"; *uovo*, "egg."

Many masculines in *o* have this irregular feminine plural in *a* besides the regular masculine plural in *i*. The most common are : *braccio*, "arm"; *dito*, "finger"; *frutto*, "fruit"; *ginocchio*, "knee"; *labbro*, "lip"; *legno*, "wood"; *membro*, "member"; *muro*, "wall"; *orecchio*, "ear"; *osso*, "bone."

\* Likewise the rare or obsolete words : *flemmaggo*, *idraggo*, *metallurgo*, *sargo* (also reg. plur.), *sortilego*.

† Likewise the rare words : *aprico*, *lombrico* (also reg.), *uvamico*, *vico*.

‡ Likewise its compounds.

§ Likewise the rare or obsolete words : *filáccico*, *mantaco* (also reg.), *ostático*, *sfiláccico*, *stático* (noun), *úncico*.

**Ex. :** *Un páio*, a pair ; *sette páia*, seven pairs.

*Il mio bráccio*, my arm ; *le tue bráccia*, thy arms.

*Il lábbro*, the lip ; *le lábbra* or *i lábbri*, the lips.

*Un óssa*, a bone ; *le óssa* or *gli óssi*, the bones.

*Bráccio*, *ginóccchio*, *lábbro*, and *orécchio* nearly always have the irregular plural when denoting the two arms, knees, lips, or ears belonging to the same body.

**24.** All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in *i*, *ie*, *u*, or an accented vowel are invariable.

**Ex. :** *Il re*, the king ; *i re*, the kings.

*Il bréndisi*, the toast ; *i bréndisi*, the toasts.

*Úna spèce*, a kind ; *ótto spèce*, eight kinds.

*La virtù*, virtue ; *le virtù*, the virtues.

*Úna città*, a city ; *dìeci città*, ten cities.

**25.** The following nouns have irregular plurals : *búe*, "ox," pl. *buòi* ; *díto*, "god," pl. *dèi*\* ; *móglie*, "wife," pl. *mógli* ; *uòmo*, "man," pl. *uòmini*.

### EXERCISE 3.

Gli uccèlli, le farfálle, i pésci, il cáne, il múcio, le lucèrtole sòno<sup>1</sup> tútti animáli. Il gátto e il cáne sòno<sup>1</sup> animáli che háno<sup>2</sup> quáttro gámbe, háno<sup>3</sup> quáttro pièdi, e però si chiámáno<sup>4</sup> quadrúpedi. Il leóne è<sup>1</sup> il più bèllo e il più maestóso déi quadrúpedi. Gli uccèlli háno<sup>2</sup> dúe zámpe ; ed háno<sup>3</sup> le áli e con le áli vólano.<sup>5</sup> Anche le farfálle háno<sup>2</sup> le áli, áncbe le ápi háno<sup>2</sup> le áli, e vólano.<sup>5</sup> Le mósche, le zanzáre, le vèspe, e pòi mólti áltri animálini, símili a quèsti, si chiámáno<sup>4</sup> insètti. Gli uccèlli e gl' insètti náscono<sup>6</sup> dálle uòva. Tútti quèsti animáli vívono<sup>7</sup> in mèzzo all' ária. I pésci vívono<sup>7</sup> in mèzzo all' ácqua. I pésci non háno<sup>3</sup> gámbe ; háno<sup>3</sup> dálle párti quèlle alettíne ; e con quèste píccole

---

\* The article used with *dèi* is *gli* : *gli dèi*.

alétte e con la códa nuôtano<sup>8</sup> e guizzan<sup>9</sup> vìa nell' áqua, lèsti lèsti cóme un lámpo. Quélle alétte si chiámano<sup>4</sup> pínne. Le lucértole stríscian<sup>11</sup> su' múri, háanno<sup>8</sup> délle zampíne, ma rasènti rasènti al córpo, e quándo si muòvono<sup>10</sup> ánche súlla têrra, strísciano.<sup>11</sup> Le sêrpi non háanno<sup>2</sup> gámbe ; e quèsti animáli che non háanno<sup>2</sup> gámbe e che strísciano<sup>11</sup> sulla têrra, cóme le lucértole e le sêrpi, si chiáman<sup>4</sup> rêtili.

- <sup>1</sup> È = is; *sóno* = are. <sup>2</sup> Have. <sup>3</sup> They have. <sup>4</sup> *Si chidmano* = are called.  
<sup>5</sup> They fly. <sup>6</sup> Are born. <sup>7</sup> Live. <sup>8</sup> They swim. <sup>9</sup> Dart. <sup>10</sup> *Si muòvono* = they move. <sup>11</sup> Crawl, they crawl.

EXERCISE 4.<sup>1</sup>

Mignonettes are<sup>2</sup> born from the seed. The seed, placed under ground, has<sup>3</sup> sprouted ; from one side it-has<sup>3</sup> put-out<sup>4</sup> shoots, which have-spread-out<sup>5</sup> through<sup>6</sup> the ground, and from one side it-has<sup>3</sup> sent forth the stalk, the little-branches,<sup>7</sup> the leaves, and<sup>9</sup> the flowers. Like mignonettes,<sup>8</sup> many other plants, herbs, and<sup>9</sup> flowers spring<sup>10</sup> from the seed. Flowers, herbs, grain, and trees are-called<sup>11</sup> vegetables. Vegetables have<sup>3</sup> roots, trunk, branches, twigs, leaves, flowers, and<sup>9</sup> fruit. Plants first produce<sup>12</sup> the flower and then the fruit. The trunk or stalk of plants is<sup>2</sup> that<sup>13</sup> which rests<sup>14</sup> on the roots and<sup>15</sup> comes<sup>16</sup> out from the ground ;<sup>17</sup> it-is-covered<sup>18</sup> with<sup>19</sup> branches and with<sup>19</sup> leaves. Of the stalk of plants, — for instance, of the trunk of trees, — we-make-use<sup>20</sup> for many purposes ; we-make<sup>21</sup> furniture, doors, windows, the beams that support<sup>22</sup> ceilings, ships, carriages, and<sup>9</sup> cars. The branches of trees are-burned,<sup>23</sup> and give-us<sup>24</sup> fire. Vegetables in-order-to<sup>25</sup> live have<sup>3</sup> need of earth, of water, and<sup>9</sup> of light.

- <sup>1</sup> See 13, *b*. <sup>2</sup> Is = è; are = *sóno*. <sup>3</sup> Has, it has = *ha*; have = *hanno*.  
<sup>4</sup> *Méso*. <sup>5</sup> *Si sóno distése*. <sup>6</sup> *Fra*. <sup>7</sup> *Ramicélli*. <sup>8</sup> Insert "and so."  
<sup>9</sup> Omit. <sup>10</sup> *Náscono*. <sup>11</sup> *Si chidmano*. <sup>12</sup> *Fánno*. <sup>13</sup> *Quéllo*. <sup>14</sup> *Pósa*.  
<sup>15</sup> Insert "which." <sup>16</sup> *Viéne*. <sup>17</sup> Insert "and." <sup>18</sup> *Si ricúopre*. <sup>19</sup> *Di*.  
<sup>20</sup> *Ci servíamo*. <sup>21</sup> *Faccíamo*. <sup>22</sup> *Réggono*. <sup>23</sup> *Si brúciano*. <sup>24</sup> *Ci dánno*. <sup>25</sup> *Per*.

## ADJECTIVES.

**26.** Adjectives agree with their substantives in gender and number. An adjective modifying two nouns of different genders is generally put in the masculine plural.

Ex.: *Il gatto è pulito*, the cat is neat.

*Tre stanze pulite*, three neat rooms.

*Una casa e un giardino bellini*, a pretty house and garden.

**27.** Adjectives usually follow their nouns; but the most common ones denoting quantity, size, number, goodness, beauty, and ugliness generally precede.

Ex.: *Un uomo disgraziato*, an unfortunate man.

*Troppo pane*, too much bread; *le grandi città*, great cities.

*La seconda volta*, the second time.

*La buona madre*, the good mother.

*Un bel cassetto*, a fine bureau.

*La brutta seggiola*, the ugly chair.

## GENDER AND NUMBER.

**28.** Adjectives ending in *o* are masculine, and form their feminine in *a*. Adjectives in *e* are invariable in the singular.

Ex.: *Un buono stivaletto*, a good boot; *una buona scarpa*, a good shoe.

*Un ragazzo felice*, a happy boy; *una ragazza felice*, a happy girl.

**29.** Adjectives form their plural in the same way as nouns (see 22, 23).

Ex.: *Six buoni cassettoni*, six good bureaus; *otto buone seggiole*, eight good chairs.

*Due uomini felici*, two happy men; *tre donne felici*, three happy women.

a. *Parécchi*, "several," has for its feminine *parécchie*.

Ex.: *Parécchi tavollni*, several tables; *parécchie tdvole*, several dinner-tables.

b. *Qualche*, "some," is used only in the singular, even when the meaning is plural.

Ex.: *Qudlche vòlta*, sometimes.

c. When preceding a noun, *bèllo*, "beautiful," has forms similar to those of the definite article; and *Sánto*, "Saint," and *gránde*, "great," have corresponding forms in the singular. *Buòno*, "good," when preceding its noun, has a singular similar to the indefinite article. The masculine of these words (which is the only irregular part) is, therefore, as follows:—

Before any consonant except *s* impure or *z*: *bel*, *San*, *gran*, *buon*; pl. *bèi*, *Sánti*, *grándi*, *buòni*.

Before *s* impure or *z*: *bèllo*, *Sánto*, *gránde*, *buòno*; pl. *bègli*, *Sánti*, *grándi*, *buòni*.

Before a vowel: *bèll*, *Sanf*, *grand*, *buon*; pl. *bègli*, *Sánti*, *grándi*, *buòni*.

When used *after* a noun or in the predicate these adjectives have their full forms (*bèllo*, *bèlli*, *Sánto*, *Sánti*, *gránde*, *grándi*, *buòno*, *buòni*).

Ex.: *Un bel quaddro*, a fine picture; *dúe bèi lètti*, two fine beds.

*Un bello scaffale*, a fine bookcase; *quattro bègli stivdi*, four fine boots.

*Un bèll andito*, a fine hall; *mólti bègli orològi*, many fine clocks.

*Una bella stúfa*, a fine stove; *parécchie belle tènde*, several fine curtains.

*Il palazzo è bello*, the palace is fine; *le sèdie son belle*, the chairs are beautiful.

*San Piètro, Sánto Stéfano e Sanf Antònio*, St. Peter, St. Stephen, and St. Anthony.

*Un gran fuòco*, a big fire; *grándi camini*, big fire-places.



*Il grande scaldino*, the big foot-warmer; *dici grandi spilli*, ten big pins.

*Un grande sciame*, a great swarm; *il grande stipo*, the large bung.

*Un grand' armadio*, a big wardrobe; *venti grandi alberi*, twenty big trees.

*Una grande camera*, a large bedroom; *cinque grandi finestre*, five big windows.

*Il salotto è molto grande*, the parlor is very large.

*Un buon lume*, a good lamp; *buoni fiammiferi*, good matches.

*Il buono sgabello*, the good stool; *nove buoni scolari*, nine good pupils.

*Il buon olio*, the good oil; *parecchi buoni aghi*, several good needles.

*Una buona cucina*, a good kitchen; *le buone candele*, the good candles.

*Il bambino è buono*, the child is good.

**30.** Any adjective of either gender or either number may be used as a noun.

Ex.: *I buoni*, the good; *la bella*, the beautiful woman.

### COMPARISON.

**31.** All Italian adjectives form their comparative by prefixing *più* "more," and their superlative by prefixing *il più*, "the most." When the superlative immediately follows the noun, the article of *il più* is omitted.

Ex.: *Bello*, beautiful; *più bello*, more beautiful; *il più bello*, the most beautiful.

*Lungo*, long; *più lungo*, longer; *il più lungo*, the longest.

*La via più corta*, the shortest way.

**a.** The following adjectives have an irregular comparison in addition to the regular one:—

*Alto*, high; *più alto* or *superiore*; *il più alto* or *il superiore*.

*Basso*, low; *più basso* or *inferiore*; *il più basso* or *l'inferiore*.

*Buono*, good; *più buono* or *migliore*; \* *il più buono* or *il migliore*.

*Cattivo*, bad; *più cattivo* or *peggiore*; \* *il più cattivo* or *il peggiore*.

*Grande*, big; *più grande* or *maggiore*; *il più grande* or *il maggiore*.

*Piccolo*, small; *più piccolo* or *minore*; *il più piccolo* or *il minore*.

"Higher" and "lower" are commonly rendered by *più alto* and *più basso*; *superiore* and *inferiore* generally mean "superior" and "inferior." *Migliore* and *peggiore* are more used than *più buono* and *più cattivo*, which have the same sense. "Larger" and "smaller" are generally *più grande* and *più piccolo*; *maggiore* and *minore* usually signify "older" and "younger."

Ex.: *Noi siamo migliori di loro*, we are better than they.

*Questa sala da pranzo è la più grande*, this dining-room is the biggest.

*Pietro è il fratello minore*, Peter is the youngest brother.

**32.** The adverb "less" is expressed by *méno*, "least" by *il méno*. "As . . . as," "so . . . as" are *tanto . . . quanto*, *tanto . . . come*, *così . . . come*, or simply *quanto*.

Ex.: *Quella stanza è la meno bellina*, that room is the least pretty.

*Paolo non è tanto buono come Roberto*, Paul isn't so good as Robert.

*Giovanni è alto quanto Filippo*, John is as tall as Philip.

**33.** "Than" is *che*.

Ex.: *L'albergo è più grande che bello*, the hotel is bigger than it is beautiful.

But before a noun, a pronoun, or a numeral "than" is *di*. If, however, this "than" is preceded by a word meaning "rather" or its contrary, it is translated *che*.

---

\* The adverbs "better" and "worse" are *méglio* and *péggio*.

Ex.: *Riccardo è peggiore di Guglielmo*, Richard is worse than William.

*Voi siete più ricchi di noi*, you are richer than we.

*Meno di cinque*, less than five.

*Piuttosto la morte che il disonore*, rather death than dishonor.

Before an inflected verb "than" is *che non* or *di quel che*.

Ex.: *Abbaia più che non morde*, he barks more than he bites.

*Prometto meno di quel che do*, I promise less than I give.

34. "The more . . . the more," "the less . . . the less" are *più . . . più*, *meno . . . meno*. "More" and "less" after a number are *di più*, *di meno*. In speaking of time, "longer" after a negative is *più*.

Ex.: *Più studio, più imparo*, the more I study, the more I learn.

*Trenta giorni di meno*, thirty days less.

*Non lo vediamo più*, we see him no longer.

#### EXERCISE 5.

Il sóle è<sup>1</sup> un glòbo grandissimo e sêmpre infocato: éssò è<sup>1</sup> grânde óltre un milióne di vólte più délla têrra; e díre<sup>2</sup> che a' nôstri ôcchi apparisce<sup>3</sup> tánto più piccólo! Ánche la lúna, che splênde<sup>4</sup> duránte la nôtte, è<sup>1</sup> rotónda, ma è<sup>1</sup> móltó più piccóla délla têrra, e gíra<sup>5</sup> intórno a quéstà<sup>6</sup> continovaménte. La lúna non ha<sup>1</sup> lúce da sè, ma la ricéve<sup>7</sup> dal sóle. Êcco<sup>8</sup> perché la lúna óra la vediámo<sup>9</sup> e óra non la vediámo<sup>9</sup> più, óra ne vediámo<sup>9</sup> mêzza, óra uno spicchio, óra un po' più, óra un po' ménò, secóndo che di éssa ci si presênta<sup>10</sup> úna pártè maggióre o minóre illumináta dal sóle. Le stélle sóno<sup>1</sup> tútti quéi<sup>11</sup> púnti luminósi che vediámo<sup>9</sup> brilláre di<sup>12</sup> nôtte nel firmaménto. Non crediáte,<sup>13</sup> però, che le stélle siano<sup>1</sup> piccóle cóme nói le vediámo<sup>9</sup>: ci páiono<sup>14</sup> cosí piccíne per la smisuráta distánza che córre<sup>15</sup> da lóro a nói; ma le stélle sóno<sup>1</sup> grandíssime, e ce n'è di quélle<sup>16</sup> che sóno<sup>1</sup> in-

finitaménte più grándi del sóle. Gli è<sup>1</sup> che il sóle è<sup>1</sup> méno lontano di ésse dálla têrra che nói abitiámo.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> È = is; *sóno, stano* (subj.) = are; *ha* = has. <sup>2</sup> To think. <sup>3</sup> It seems. <sup>4</sup> Shines. <sup>5</sup> Turns. <sup>6</sup> It. <sup>7</sup> *La ricéve* = receives it. <sup>8</sup> That is. <sup>9</sup> *Vedidmo* = we see; *la vedidmo* = we see it; *le vedidmo* = we see them; *ne vedidmo* = we see of it. <sup>10</sup> *Ci si presénta* = there presents itself to us. <sup>11</sup> Those. <sup>12</sup> At. <sup>13</sup> *Non credidte* = do not think. <sup>14</sup> *Ci páiono* = they seem to us. <sup>15</sup> Intervenes. <sup>16</sup> *Ce n'è dí quélle* = there are some. <sup>17</sup> Inhabit.

#### EXERCISE 6.

The moon is<sup>1</sup> in the middle of<sup>2</sup> the sky. The moon is<sup>1</sup> round ; it-looks<sup>3</sup> perfectly round like a melon. And it-looks<sup>3</sup> too, as big as a melon. The moon seems<sup>4</sup> little because it-is<sup>1</sup> far, far from us who are<sup>5</sup> on the earth. The moon renders<sup>6</sup> a great service to men : because when everything is<sup>1</sup> dark, it<sup>7</sup> illumines<sup>8</sup> with its beautiful light the earth which we-inhabit.<sup>9</sup> The stars are<sup>10</sup> larger than the moon, but to-look-at-them<sup>11</sup> they-seem<sup>12</sup> smaller, because they-are<sup>10</sup> so-much<sup>13</sup> further than the moon. The most beautiful, the most intense light comes<sup>14</sup> from the sun.

<sup>1</sup> È. <sup>2</sup> A. <sup>3</sup> *Par* or *pare*. <sup>4</sup> *Si véde*. <sup>5</sup> *Siámo*. <sup>6</sup> *Fa*. <sup>7</sup> *Éssa*. <sup>8</sup> *Rischidra*. <sup>9</sup> *Abitidmo*. <sup>10</sup> *Sóno*. <sup>11</sup> *A vederle*. <sup>12</sup> *Páiono*. <sup>13</sup> *Tánto*. <sup>14</sup> *Viéne*.

### AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES; NUMERALS.

#### AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ENDINGS.

35. Instead of an adjective the Italians often use a suffix to express size or quality. This suffix may be added to a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. When added to an adjective, and generally when added to a noun, it takes the gender of the word to which it is affixed : occasionally,

however, a suffix with masculine termination is added to a feminine noun, which thereby becomes masculine. A word loses its final vowel before a suffix; but the preceding consonant, if it be *c* or *g*, must keep its former quality: as *Cárlo* + *ino* = *Carlino*, *vóce* + *óne* = *vocióne*, *pòco* + *ino* = *pochino*, *adágio* + *ino* = *adagino*.

a. The commonest ending is *-issimo*, "very," which in general is added only to adjectives and adverbs. Adverbs in *-mente* add the *-mente* after the *-issimo* (see 85). Any adjective may take it, and it is very often used in cases where it would be entirely superfluous in English.

Ex.: *Lárgo*, wide; *larghissimo*, very wide.

*Béne*, well; *bentissimo*, very well.

*Gránde*, big; *grandissimo*, very big.

*Fa un témpo bellissimo*, it's beautiful weather.

*Bellissimamente*, very beautifully.

b. The principal suffix denoting bigness is *-óne*; it is always masculine when added to nouns, but has a feminine form *-óna* which is sometimes used with adjectives.

Ex.: *Líbro*, book; *libróne*, big book.

*Cása*, house; *casóne*, large house.

c. The most important suffixes denoting smallness are *-ino*, *-cino*, *-icino*, *-icino*, *-étto*, *-éllo*, *-céllo*, *-icéllo*, *-aréllo*, *-eréllo*, *-óttó*, *-úccio*, *-úzzo*, *-uólo*. These endings, especially *-úccio*, are often used to express affection; some of them may be used to express pity or contempt. *Ótto* sometimes means "somewhat large" instead of "small."

Ex.: *Sorélla*, sister; *sorellina*, little sister.

*Béllo*, beautiful; *bellino*, pretty.

*Brútto*, ugly; *bruttino*, rather ugly.

*Pízza*, square; *piazzétta*, little square.

*Giörgio*, George; *Giorgétto*, Georgie.

*Campana*, bell; *campanello*, little bell.

*Aquila*, eagle; *aquilotto*, eaglet.

*Casa*, house; *casotta*, rather large house.

*Giovanni*, John; *Giovannuccio*, dear little Johnny.

*Pazzo*, mad; *pazzarella*, poor mad woman.

*Povero*, poor; *poverini*, poor things!

d. The ending *-uccio* denotes worthlessness.

Ex.: *Roba*, stuff, goods; *roba*, trash.

*Tempo*, weather; *tempaccio*, nasty weather.

*Alfredo*, Alfred; *Alfreduccio*, naughty Alfred.

36. Of the endings added to nouns *-ino* is by far the most common; the only ones that are freely used to form new compounds are *-ino*, "little," *-one*, "great," *-uccio*, "dear," and *-uccio*, "bad." In very many cases endings lose their character of independent suffixes, and become inseparable parts of certain words, whose meanings they often change: as *scala*, "stairway"; *scalino*, "stair"; *scalotto*, "ladder." Some suffixes (as *-uolo*) are rarely used except in this way. Others (as *-cino*, *-icino*, *-ello*, *-ello*, *-icello*, *-arello*, *-erello*) cannot be attached to any word at pleasure, their use being determined by precedent or euphony; those beginning with *c* are used only after *n*.

37. Sometimes several suffixes are added at once to the same word: as *ladro*, "thief"; *ladrone*, "terrible thief"; *ladroncello*, "terrible little thief."

## NUMERALS.

38. The cardinal numerals are:—

1, *uno*.

5, *cinque*.

9, *nove*.

13, *trédici*.

2, *due*.

6, *sèi*.

10, *dièci*.

14, *quattordici*.

3, *tre*.

7, *sette*.

11, *undici*.

15, *quindici*.

4, *quattro*.

8, *otto*.

12, *doici*.

16, *sedici*.

|  |  |   |  |
|--|--|---|--|
| 17, <i>diciasette.</i>                     | 26, <i>ventisèi.</i>                         | 50, <i>cinquanta.</i>                       | 125, <i>cento venti-</i><br><i>cinque.</i> |
| 18, <i>diciotto.</i>                       | 27, <i>ventisette.</i>                       | 60, <i>sessanta.</i>                        |  |
| 19, <i>diciannove.</i>                     | 28, <i>ventotto</i> or<br><i>vent' otto.</i> | 70, <i>settanta.</i>                        | 200, <i>dugento</i> or<br><i>duccento.</i> |
| 20, <i>venti.</i>                          |  | 80, <i>ottanta.</i>                         |  |
| 21, <i>ventuno</i> or<br><i>vent' uno.</i> | 29, <i>ventinove.</i>                        | 90, <i>novanta.</i>                         | 250, <i>dugento cin-</i><br><i>quanta.</i> |
| 22, <i>ventidue.</i>                       | 30, <i>trènta.</i>                           | 100, <i>cènto.</i>                          |  |
| 23, <i>ventitrè.</i>                       | 31, <i>trentuno</i> or<br><i>trent' uno.</i> | 101, <i>centuno</i> or<br><i>cent' uno.</i> | 300, <i>trecento.</i>                      |
| 24, <i>ventiquattro.</i>                   | 32, <i>trentadue.</i>                        | 105, <i>centocinque.</i>                    | 400, <i>quattrocènto.</i>                  |
| 25, <i>venticinque.</i>                    | 40, <i>quaranta.</i>                         | 115, <i>centoquindici.</i>                  | 1000, <i>mille.</i>                        |
|  |  |   | 2000, <i>due mila.</i>                     |

*Uno* has a feminine *una*: as *una lira*, "one franc." The plural of *mille* is *mila*: as *tre mila*, "three thousand." "A million" is *un milione* or *millione*, of which the plural is *milioni* or *millioni*: as *tre milioni*, "three million."

(1) No conjunction is used between the different parts of a number: as *dugento quaranta*, "two hundred and forty." No indefinite article is used before *cènto* and *mille*: as *cènto libri*, "a hundred books."

(2) *Cènto*, *dugento*, etc., when followed by another numeral of more than two syllables may lose the final syllable -to: as *seicènto cinquanta* or *seicencinquanta*, "six hundred and fifty."

(3) "Eleven hundred," "twelve hundred," etc., must be rendered *millecènto*, *mille dugento*, etc.: as *mille ottocènto ottantasette*, 1887.

(4) "Both," "all three," etc., are *tutti* (fem. *tutte*) e *due*, *tutti* (fem. *tutte*) e *tre*, etc.

a. If the noun modified by *ventuno*, *trentuno*, etc., follows the numeral, it should be in the singular; if it precedes, it is put in the plural.

Ex.: *Sessantuna lira* or *lire sessantuna*, 61 francs.

b. In dates the definite article is prefixed to the number representing the year.

Ex.: *Nel mille ottocento ottantasette*, in 1887.

c. "What time is it?" is *che ora è?* "It is six," etc., is *sóno le sei*, etc., *óre* being understood. "One o'clock" is *il tòcco*.

Ex.: *Sóno le due e mezzo*, it's half-past two.

*Sóno le tre e dieci*, it's ten minutes past three.

*Ci mancano venti minúti alle quattró*, it's twenty minutes to four.

*Sóno le cinque meno un quarto*, it's a quarter to five.

### 39. The ordinal numerals are:—

|                          |                                 |                                   |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1st, <i>primo</i> .      | 12th, <i>duodécimo</i> or       | 20th, <i>ventésimo</i> .          |
| 2d, <i>secóndo</i> .     | <i>décimo secóndo</i> .         | 21st, <i>ventésimo primo</i> or   |
| 3d, <i>térzo</i> .       | 13th, <i>tredicésimo</i> or     | <i>ventunésimo</i> .              |
| 4th, <i>quárto</i> .     | <i>décimo térzo</i> .           | 22d, <i>ventésimo secóndo</i>     |
| 5th, <i>quínto</i> .     | 14th, <i>quattordicésimo</i> or | or <i>ventiduéesimo</i> .         |
| 6th, <i>sésto</i> .      | <i>décimo quárto</i> .          | 30th, <i>trentésimo</i> .         |
| 7th, <i>séttimo</i> .    | 15th, <i>quindicésimo</i> or    | 100th, <i>centésimo</i> .         |
| 8th, <i>ottávo</i> .     | <i>décimo quínto</i> .          | 101st, <i>centésimo primo</i> .   |
| 9th, <i>nóno</i> .       | 16th, <i>décimo sésto</i> .     | 115th, <i>centoquindicésimo</i> . |
| 10th, <i>décimo</i> .    | 17th, <i>décimo séttimo</i> .   | 200th, <i>ducentésimo</i> .       |
| 11th, <i>undécimo</i> or | 18th, <i>décimo ottávo</i> .    | 1000th, <i>millésimo</i> .        |
| <i>décimo primo</i> .    | 19th, <i>décimo nóno</i> .      | 2000th, <i>duemilésimo</i> .      |

All of them form their feminines and plurals like other adjectives in *o*.

Ex.: *Le settantésime quinte cose*, the 75th things.

a. Ordinal numerals are used after the words "book," "chapter," and the names of rulers; but no article intervenes.

Ex.: *Carlo secóndo*, Charles the Second; *Pio nóno*, Pius IX.

*Libro térzo*, Book the Third; *capítolo quárto*, chapter four.

b. For the day of the month, except the first, a cardinal number is used.

Ex.: *Il dì cinque d'aprile* or *il cinque aprile*, the fifth of April.

*Il primo di mággio*, the first of May.



c. "A third," "a fourth," "a fifth," etc., are *un terzo, un quarto, un quinto*, etc. "Half" is *la metà*; the adjective "half" is *mezzo*.

40. "A couple" or "a pair" is *un paio*. "A dozen" is *una dozzina*. The expressions *una decina, una ventina, una trentina*, etc., *un centinaio, un migliaio*, mean "about ten," "about twenty," etc. "Once," "twice," etc., are *una volta, due volte*, etc.

Ex.: *Un paio di scarpe*, a pair of shoes.

*Una cinquantina di persone*, some fifty persons.

*L'ho visto parecchie volte*, I've seen it several times.

#### EXERCISE 7.

Con l'orologio si vede<sup>1</sup> che ore sono.<sup>2</sup> Un giorno è<sup>3</sup> ventiquattr' ore. Certe ore del giorno è<sup>2</sup> lume, certe ore è<sup>2</sup> buio. Un giorno è<sup>3</sup> ventiquattr' ore, ma sulla mostra dell' orologio, delle ore ce n' è<sup>4</sup> segnate dodici, perchè le ore del giorno si contano<sup>5</sup> dall' una alle dodici, così: tocco, due, tre, quattro, cinque, sei, sette, otto, nove, dieci, undici e dodici. Arrivati a dodici non si seguita<sup>6</sup> a dire tredici, quattordici, e via fino a ventiquattro; ma si ricomincia<sup>7</sup> da capo dal tocco e si arriva<sup>8</sup> fino a dodici. Il conto torna<sup>9</sup> lo stesso: infatti le ore del giorno son<sup>11</sup> ventiquattro; e dodici e dodici, sommati insieme, formano<sup>10</sup> ventiquattro. Dodici ore sono<sup>11</sup> la metà del giorno. L' orologio ha<sup>12</sup> dodici ore; e le ha<sup>13</sup> segnate giro giro alla mostra. L' ora è<sup>3</sup> sessanta minuti; e l' orologio segna<sup>14</sup> anche i minuti. Quelle righe tinte torno torno alla mostra, fra un' ora e un' altra, sono<sup>11</sup> i sessanta minuti che formano<sup>10</sup> l' ora. La lancetta grande segna<sup>14</sup> i minuti. La lancetta piccola segna<sup>14</sup> le ore. La lancetta grande ogni ora fa<sup>15</sup> il giro di tutti e sessanta i minuti; gira<sup>16</sup> tutta la mostra. La lancetta piccola ogni ora segna<sup>14</sup> un numero, e a girar tutta la mostra ci mette<sup>17</sup> dodici ore, perchè dodici son<sup>11</sup> le ore segnate sulla mó-

stra. Óra sóno<sup>2</sup> le dódici; tútte e dúe le lancétte sóno<sup>11</sup> sùlle dódici. Fra un' óra la lancétta gránde avrá<sup>18</sup> giráta tútta la móstra, e sará<sup>19</sup> daccápo sul número 12, e la lancétta piccína sará<sup>19</sup> sull' úno.

- <sup>1</sup> *Si véde* = we see. <sup>2</sup> It is. <sup>3</sup> Is. <sup>4</sup> *Ce n' è* = there are. <sup>5</sup> *Si còntano* = are counted. <sup>6</sup> *Non si séguíta* = we don't go on. <sup>7</sup> *Si ricòntincia* = we begin over again. <sup>8</sup> *Si arriva* = we go. <sup>9</sup> Amounts to. <sup>10</sup> Make. <sup>11</sup> Are. <sup>12</sup> Has. <sup>13</sup> *Le ha* = it has them. <sup>14</sup> Marks. <sup>15</sup> Makes. <sup>16</sup> It goes around. <sup>17</sup> *Ci mette* = it takes. <sup>18</sup> Will have. <sup>19</sup> Will be.

### EXERCISE 8.

A year is<sup>1</sup> 365 days. Every seven days is<sup>1</sup> a week. The days of the week are-called<sup>2</sup>: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. Sunday<sup>3</sup> is<sup>1</sup> a<sup>4</sup> holiday; the other days we-work,<sup>5</sup> and therefore they-are-called<sup>3</sup> working-days. The year is-divided<sup>6</sup> into twelve months. The months are-called<sup>2</sup>: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December. The month is<sup>1</sup> thirty or thirty-one days. When the month begins,<sup>7</sup> it-is-called<sup>8</sup> the first of the month; the second day is-called<sup>8</sup> the second of the month, the third, the third, and so-on<sup>9</sup> until the thirtieth or thirty-first. January, March, May, July, August, October, and<sup>4</sup> December have<sup>10</sup> thirty-one days. April, June, September, and<sup>4</sup> November have<sup>10</sup> thirty days. February is<sup>1</sup> the shortest month, because it-has<sup>11</sup> twenty-eight days only.<sup>12</sup> But every four years February has<sup>11</sup> twenty-nine days; and that year is-called<sup>13</sup> leap-year. The year begins<sup>7</sup> from January; January is,<sup>1</sup> then,<sup>14</sup> the first month of the year. The year ends<sup>15</sup> with December; so<sup>14</sup> December is<sup>1</sup> the last month of the year.

- <sup>1</sup> È. <sup>2</sup> *Si chidmano*. <sup>3</sup> Use def. article. <sup>4</sup> Omit. <sup>5</sup> *Si lavóra*. <sup>6</sup> *Si divide*. <sup>7</sup> *Comincia*. <sup>8</sup> *Si dice*. <sup>9</sup> Così. <sup>10</sup> *Hanno*. <sup>11</sup> *Ha*. <sup>12</sup> *Sóli*. <sup>13</sup> *Si chidma*. <sup>14</sup> *Dunque*. <sup>15</sup> *Finitse*.

## DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**41.** For the indefinite pronouns, see **86-91**.

**42.** (1) The demonstrative pronouns used adjectively are *questo*, "this," and *quello* or *cotesto*, "that." *Cotesto* is used only of objects near the person addressed. *Questo* and *cotesto* are inflected like other adjectives; but they generally drop *o* before a vowel. *Quello* is inflected like *bello* (see **29**, c).

Ex.: *Quest' uomo*, this man; *queste ragazze*, these girls.  
*Quel bambino*, that infant; *quei fanciulli*, those children.  
*Quell' amico*, that friend; *quegli sposi*, that couple.  
*Quello zio*, that uncle; *quelle signore*, those ladies.

*Questo* and *quello* are also used substantively for "this," "that," "this one," "that one": as *fate questo, non fate quello*, "do this, don't do that."

(2) "This man" is translated by *questi*, "that man" by *quegli*, *queli*, or *cotesti* (rare); these words are invariable, refer only to persons, and are used only in the nominative singular. *Costui* and *colui* mean respectively the same as *questi* and *quegli*, but are not defective, having a feminine singular *costei*, *collei*, and a plural (both genders alike) *costoro*, *coloro*. *Costui* is often used in a depreciative sense.

Ex.: *Questi è francese e quegli è tedesco*, this man is French and that one is German.  
*Chi è costui*, who is this fellow?  
*Parlo di colui*, I speak of that man.

(3) *Ciò*, "this," "that," is invariable, and represents a whole idea, not a single word: as *ciò è véro*, "that's so."

*a. Quello* and *questo*, *quelli* and *questi* mean also "the former," "the latter."

*b. "He who"* is *colui che*, or simply *chi*. "The one who, whom, which," "that which," "what" is *quello che* or *quel che*.

Ex.: *Chi* or *colui che lavora*, he who works.

*Quel che dico io*, the one I mean.

*A quel che sento*, from what I hear.

43. The interrogative "who," "whom," is *chi*. "What?" used substantively is *che*, *che cosa*, or *cosa*.\* "What?" used adjectively is *che* or *quale*. "Which?" is *quale*. *Quale* has a plural *quali*; *chi* and *che* are invariable. "How much?" is *quánto*, "how many?" is *quánti*.

Ex.: *Chi védo*, whom do I see?

*Di chi parlate*, of whom do you speak?

*Che cosa dice*, what does he say?

*Che* or *quali libri avete comprato*, what books did you buy?

*Quale di questi volumi è il primo*, which of these volumes is the first?

*a. The interrogative "whose" is di chi.*

Ex.: *Di chi è questo biglietto*, whose card is this?

*b. In exclamations "what a," "what," are rendered by che or quale without any article.*

Ex.: *Che bel paese*, what a beautiful country!

44. The principal relative pronouns are *che*, *cui*, *il quale*: they are all applied to both persons and things, and mean "who," "whom," "which," or "that." *Il quale* is inflected

---

\* *Cosa* (as *cosa dice*?) is generally avoided in written Italian.

(*la qudle, i qudli, le qudlì*). *Che* and *cui* are invariable: in general *che* is used only as subject and direct object, *cui* only after prepositions or as indirect object.

(1) As subject or direct object *che* is preferred to *il qudle*, unless clearness requires the latter. After prepositions *il qudle* is more common than *cui*.

Ex.: *La lingua che si parla*, the language which we speak.

*L' uomo del qudle si tratta*, the man of whom we are speaking.

*Le persone a cui or alle qudli parlo*, the persons to whom I speak.

*Lo scritto di cui parlo*, the work I am speaking of.

(2) Before *cui* the prepositions *a* and *di* are sometimes omitted. The relative "whose" is *il cui* or *del qudle*.

Ex.: *Egli è colui, cui fu dato*, he is the man to whom it was given.

*Una signora, il cui nome è Lucia*, a lady whose name is Lucy.

*L' autore, del cui libro si parla*, the author whose book we are speaking of.

*Le chiese delle qudli si vedono le cupole*, the churches whose domes we see.

(3) The relative cannot be omitted in Italian.

Ex.: *Le case che ho comprate*, the houses I have bought.

a. "Such . . . as" is *tale . . . qudle*; "as much as" is *tanto quanto*; "as many as" is *tanti quanti*.

Ex.: *Qudle è il padre tale è il figlio*, as is the father, so is the son.

b. "He who" is *chi* or *colui che* (see 42, b).

Ex.: *Chi ha la sanità è ricco*, he who has health is rich.

c. "Whoever" is *chiunque*; "whatever" as a substantive is *tutto quel che* or *checcchè*, as an adjective *quale che, qualunque che, qualunque, per quanto*. These words, excepting *tutto quel che*, all take the subjunctive. *Checcchè* is but little used.

**Ex. :** *Chiunque siddè*, whoever you may be.

*Checchè facciàte, fàtelo bène*, whatever you do, do it well.

*Tutto quel che volète*, whatever you wish.

*Quelli che siano i vostri motivi*, whatever your motives may be.

*Qualunque siano i suoi talenti*, whatever his talents may be.

*In qualunque stato che io mi trovi*, in whatever condition I may find myself.

*Per quante ricchezze egli abbia*, whatever riches he may have.

#### 45. The possessive pronouns are :—

|                 |                     |                     |                         |                         |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| My :            | m., <i>il mio</i> , | f., <i>la mia</i> , | m. pl., <i>i miei</i> , | f. pl., <i>le mie</i> . |
| Thy :           | <i>il tuo</i> ,     | <i>la tua</i> ,     | <i>i tuoi</i> ,         | <i>le tue</i> .         |
| His, her, its : | <i>il suo</i> ,     | <i>la sua</i> ,     | <i>i suoi</i> ,         | <i>le sue</i> .         |
| Our :           | <i>il nostro</i> ,  | <i>la nostra</i> ,  | <i>i nostri</i> ,       | <i>le nostre</i> .      |
| Your :          | <i>il vostro</i> ,  | <i>la vostra</i> ,  | <i>i vostri</i> ,       | <i>le vostre</i> .      |
| Their :         | <i>il loro</i> ,    | <i>la loro</i> ,    | <i>i loro</i> ,         | <i>le loro</i> .        |

*Loro* is invariable ; the others agree with the object possessed : as *il mio naso*, "my nose" ; *la sua bocca*, "his, her mouth" ; *i vostri occhi*, "your eyes" ; *le loro labbra*, "their lips."

When the possessive stands alone in the predicate, the article is commonly omitted : as *questo cappello è mio*, "this hat is mine." \*

a. The article is omitted before the possessive : (1) When a numeral, an adjective of quantity, or a demonstrative pronoun precedes it : as *questo tuo difetto*, "this fault of thine." (2) When the possessive forms part of a title : as *Vostra Maestà*, "Your Majesty" ; *Sua Altezza*, "His Highness." (3) When the possessive modifies a noun used in the vocative (in this case the possessive generally follows its noun) : as *amico mio*, "my friend !" (4) The article is generally omitted also when the possessive

---

\* *Questo cappello è mio* = this hat is mine ; *questo cappello è il mio* = this hat is mine (i.e., this one of several hats is mine).

modifies a noun in the singular expressing relationship: as *nostra madre*, "our mother." But if the noun has a diminutive ending, or an adjective precedes the noun, the article is not omitted: as *il tuo fratellino*, "thy little brother"; *la vostra gentilissima sorella*, "your kind sister." When the possessive follows the noun of relationship, the article is used before the noun: as *il cugino vostro*, "your cousin." (5) The article is omitted also in certain phrases, such as: *da parte mia*, "for me"; *per amor mio*, "for my sake"; *in casa nostra*, "in our house"; *a modo suo*, "in his own way"; *è colpa vostra*, "it's your fault."

b. The possessive, when not necessary for clearness, is usually replaced by a definite article.

Ex.: *Come sta la mamma*, how is your mother?  
*Ha perduto il giudizio*, he has lost his senses.  
*Battono i piedi*, they stamp their feet.

c. When the name of the thing possessed is direct object of a verb, the Italians often use instead of the possessive a conjunctive personal pronoun (see 47) and a definite article. If the thing possessed be a part of the body or clothing, this construction is frequent, even when the name of the thing is not object of a verb.

Ex.: *Si strappa i capelli*, he tears his hair (lit., he tears to himself the hairs).  
*Mi taglio il dito*, I cut my finger (I cut to myself the finger).  
*Il cane gli agguantò la gamba*, the dog seized his leg (seized to him the leg).  
*Mi duole il capo*, my head aches (to me aches the head).

d. When the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, "his," "her" are, for the sake of clearness, often rendered *di lui*, *di lei*.

Ex.: *Egli non conosce il di lei cuore*, he does not know her heart.

e. "A . . . of mine, of thine," etc., is *un mio*, *un tuo*, etc.

Ex.: *Una nostra cugina*, a cousin of ours.

## EXERCISE 9.

Quándo cádde<sup>1</sup> l' impêro, Siêna soffrì<sup>2</sup> méno délle áltre città toscáne dälle invasióni déi bárbari ; ma vénne<sup>3</sup> sótto la signoria déi Longobárdi, e pòi fu<sup>4</sup> úna délle città libere di Carlomagno, néi cónti e baróni del quále, arricchiti dälle têrre e daí castèlli che diède<sup>5</sup> lóro<sup>6</sup> l' imperatóre, i nóbili senési crédono<sup>7</sup> trováre l' origine délla lóro nobiltà. Quésti ládri forestiêri, i cúi nídi néi dintórni di Firênze i cidadíni di quésto comúne cercávano<sup>8</sup> di distrúggere, abbandonárono<sup>9</sup> voluntariaménte i lóro castèlli nel território senése, ed entrárono<sup>10</sup> nélla città, che da éssi e daí véscovi veníva<sup>4</sup> abbellita di grándi palázzi e governáta con úna máno di fêrro, finchè<sup>11</sup> i comúni non<sup>11</sup> si levárono<sup>12</sup> e non<sup>11</sup> féceró<sup>13</sup> prevalére il lóro dirítto a partecipáre nélla còsa públlica.

- <sup>1</sup> Fell.   <sup>2</sup> Suffered.   <sup>3</sup> It came.   <sup>4</sup> Was.   <sup>5</sup> Gave.   <sup>6</sup> To them.   <sup>7</sup> Think, believe.   <sup>8</sup> Were trying.   <sup>9</sup> Abandoned.   <sup>10</sup> Entered.   <sup>11</sup> *Finchè non* = until.   <sup>12</sup> *Si levárono* = arose.   <sup>13</sup> Made.

## EXERCISE 10.

Charles V made<sup>1</sup> of Siena a fief for his son Philip II, who ceded-it<sup>2</sup> to Cosimo I, and the latter built-there<sup>3</sup> the fort which the Spaniards had-tried-to<sup>4</sup> construct. The city remained<sup>5</sup> under the rule of the good dukes of Lorraine, until Napoleon made-it<sup>6</sup> capital of the department of the Ombrone. After the fall of the emperor, it-returned<sup>7</sup> under the dominion of the dukes. In<sup>8</sup> 1860 it-was<sup>9</sup> the first Tuscan city that voted<sup>10</sup> the union of Italy under Victor Emmanuel II, the only honest king of whom history speaks.<sup>11</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> *Féce*.   <sup>2</sup> *La cedette*.   <sup>3</sup> *Vi fabbricò*.   <sup>4</sup> *Avévano volúto*.   <sup>5</sup> *Restò*.   <sup>6</sup> *La féce*.   <sup>7</sup> *Ritornò*.   <sup>8</sup> See 38, b.   <sup>9</sup> *Fu*.   <sup>10</sup> *Votásse*.   <sup>11</sup> *Parli*, which should precede its subject.



## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**46.** Personal pronouns are divided into two classes, conjunctive and disjunctive: the conjunctive forms are those used as direct object of a verb, and as indirect object without a preposition; the disjunctive forms are those used as subject of a verb, and as object of a preposition.

## CONJUNCTIVE FORMS.

**47.** These forms are called conjunctive because they cannot be separated from the verb, which they sometimes follow but oftener precede, as will be explained in **48**.

They exist only in the objective case, being used either as direct object of a verb or as indirect object without a preposition. The forms are these:—

*Mi*, me, to me.

*Ti*, thee, to thee.

*Ci*, us, to us.

*Vi*, you, to you.

*Si* (reflexive), himself, to himself; herself, to herself.

*Si* (reflexive), themselves, to themselves.

*Lo*, him; *gli*, to him.

*La*, her; *le*, to her.

*Li*, them (masc.); *loro*, to them.

*Le*, them (fem.); *loro*, to them.

There being no neuter form of the personal pronoun in Italian, "it" must be rendered by a masculine or feminine form, according to the gender of the noun it represents. "It" representing not a word, but a whole clause, is *lo*.

Ex.: *Mi conosce*, he knows me; *ti do i libri*, I give thee the books.

*Ci vedete*, you see us; *vi dico tutto*, I tell you everything.

*Si veste*, he dresses himself; *si divertono*, they amuse themselves.

*Vedete quell' albero?* — *Lo vido*. — "Do you see that tree?"

"I see it."

*Vi piace la Spagna?* — *Non la conosco*. — "Does Spain suit you?" "I'm not acquainted with it."

*Come poteva sapere se io veniva o no? — Lo ha indovinato. —*  
 "How could he tell whether I was coming or not?" "He guessed it."

(1) It will be seen that the third person (not reflexive) has different forms for the direct and the indirect object.

Ex.: *Lo trovai*, I found him; *gli feci un regalo*, I made him a present.

*La lascia*, he leaves her; *le scrive*, he writes to her.

*Li cercate*, you seek them (masc.); *le salutate*, you greet them (fem.); *mandiamo loro mille saluti*, we send them (masc. or fem.) a thousand greetings.

(2) The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are: *mi*, *ci*; *ti*, *vi*. All reflexive pronouns are used also as reciprocal pronouns.

Ex.: *Mi difendo*, I defend myself; *vi lavate*, you wash yourselves.

*Si odiano*, they hate each other; *ci amiamo*, we love one another.

(3) Another conjunctive pronoun is *ne*,\* "of it," "of them"; it corresponds also to "any," "some" when these words mean "any, some of it, of them." It is often used pleonastically in Italian.

Ex.: *Ne parla*, he speaks of it; *ne ho*, I have some.

*Non ne abbiamo*, we haven't any; *ne volete*, do you want any?

*Tu ne approfitti di questa libertà*, you make good use of this liberty.

a. *Ci*, "us," and *vi*, "you," must not be confounded with the adverbs *ci*, *vi* meaning "here," "there," "to it," "to them," etc.† These adverbs (see 84) are very common in Italian, and are often used pleonastically. There is also an adverb *ne*\* meaning "thence," "from it," "from them."

---

\* Cf. French *en*.

† Cf. French *y*.

Ex.: *Ci vado*, I go there; *è troppo basso per arrivarci*, he's too short to reach up to it.

*A queste cose non ci penso* (*pensare a* = to think of), I don't think of these things.

*Ne tornerà domani*, he will return from there to-morrow.

48. The conjunctive pronouns, except *loro*, immediately precede the verb: as *mi vedete*, "you see me"; *non lo capisco*, "I don't understand him."

But when the verb is an infinitive,\* a participle, or a positive imperative,† the pronoun follows the verb, and is written as one word with it: as *per vederlo*, "to see him"; *di averlo veduto*, "to have seen him"; *vedendoci*, "seeing us"; *avendoci veduto*, "having seen us"; *vedutoti*, "having seen thee"; *vedeteli*, "see them." The addition of the pronoun does not change the place of the accent.

*Loro* always follows the verb, but is never united to it: as *egli dà loro del vino*, "he gives them some wine"; *parlate loro*, "speak to them."

a. When an infinitive depends immediately on another verb, the pronoun may either be attached to the infinitive or precede the other verb.

Ex.: *Posso vederti* or *ti posso vedere*, I can see thee.

b. When a conjunctive pronoun is joined to an infinitive, that infinitive drops its final *e*; if it ends in *-rre*, it drops *-re*.

Ex.: *Farlo* (*fare*), to do it; *condurvi* (*condurre*), to conduct you.

\* Not the infinitive used (with a negative) as imperative (see 72): as *non lo fare*, "do not do it."

† Not the subjunctive (see 77, a) nor the negative imperative. Ex.: *Si regoli* (third pers. sing. pres. subj.), "let him moderate himself"; *non li guardate*, "do not look at them."

*c.* The final vowel of *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *lo*, *la* is often elided (that of *lo*, *la* nearly always) before a verb beginning with a vowel.

Ex.: *T' amo*, I love thee; *I' ho visto*, I've seen him.

*d.* All conjunctive pronouns except *gli* and *glie* (see 50) double their initial consonant when added to any form of a verb that ends in an accented vowel.

Ex.: *Dámmi* (imper. *da'* from *dare*), give me.

*Dillo* (imper. *dì* from *dire*), say it.

*Parleròlle* (antique, for *le parlerò*), I shall speak to her.

*e.* The adverbs *ne*, *ci*, and *vi* occupy the same positions as the conjunctive pronouns (see 47, *a*).

*f.* Pronouns are joined to the interjection *ecco*, "see here," just as they are joined to the imperative of a verb.

Ex.: *Èccomi*, here I am; *èccole*, here they are.

*Èccotelo pronto*, here it is ready for thee.

49. When two conjunctive pronouns come together, the indirect object precedes the direct: as *mi vi presenta*, "he introduces you to me"; *non vuol presentárvimi*, "he will not introduce me to you"; *gli si presentò un uomo*, "a man presented himself to him."

*Loro*, however, always comes last: as *presentátela loro*, "introduce her to them."

*Ne* follows all forms except *loro*: as *me ne dà*, "he gives me some"; *dátene loro*, "give them some."

*a.* The adverbs *ne*, *ci*, and *vi* follow the pronouns of the first and second persons, but precede those of the third: *te ne caccia*, "he drives you away from it"; *mi vi troverà*, "you will find me there"; *ce la manda*, "he sends it here"; *ve lo trovai*, "I found him there." *Sì*, however, always precedes *ne*.

**50.** *Mi, ti, ci, vi, si* change their *i* to *e* before *lo, la, gli, li, le, ne*, and are often united with them: as *me lo* (or *mélo*) *dice*, "he tells me it"; *ve ne* (or *véne*) *domándo*, "I ask you for some"; *mandátecelo*, "send it to us." *Gli* and *le* ("to her") become *glie* before *lo, la, li, le, ne*, and unite with them: as *gliéli mándo*, "I send them to him, to her"; *vôglio dârglielo*, "I wish to give it to him, to her."

### DISJUNCTIVE FORMS.

**51.** These forms are so called because they do not necessarily stand next to the verb.

Disjunctive pronouns have two cases, nominative and objective. The objective case is used only after prepositions (for exceptions, see **51, a**).

The disjunctive forms are these: —

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Io</i> , I; <i>me</i> , me.   | <i>Tu</i> , thou; <i>te</i> , thee. |
| <i>Nôî</i> , we; <i>nôî</i> , us.  | <i>Vôî</i> , you; <i>vôî</i> , you. |
| { <i>Ègli, lui, esso</i> , he; <i>lui, esso</i> , him.                         |                                     |
| { <i>Èlla, lei, essa</i> , she; <i>lei, essa</i> , her.                        |                                     |
| { <i>Èssi, loro (èglino)</i> , they (masc.); <i>loro, essi</i> , them (masc.). |                                     |
| { <i>Èsse, loro (èlleno)</i> , they (fem.); <i>loro, esse</i> , them (fem.).   |                                     |

"It" must be rendered by a masculine or feminine form, according to the gender of the noun it represents. "It" as subject of an impersonal verb is regularly not expressed (see, however, **51, h**).

**Ex.:** *La càsa è grandíssima, e intorno ad essa c'è un giardino*, the house is very large, and around it there is a garden.

*Non è véro*, it isn't true; *pidue*, it rains.

(1) The various pronouns of the third person are used as follows. In speaking of things the different forms of *esso* are the ones commonly employed. In speaking of

persons *egli* (or *esso*), *ella* (or *essa*), pl. *essi*, *esse* are used for the nominative in written Italian, but in the spoken language they are replaced by *lui*, *lei*, *loro*; for the objective *lui*, *lei*, *loro* are used both in conversation and in writing. *Égolino* and *élleno* are antique forms.

Ex.: *Queste cose sono vere anch' esse*, these things are true too.

*Ella parla con loro*, she speaks with them.

*Lui è giovane ma lui è vecchio*, she is young, but he is old.

*Vennero da noi anch' essi*, they came to us too.

(2) As the Italian verb denotes by its endings the person and number of its subject, the personal pronouns of the nominative case are generally omitted. When expressed (for clearness, emphasis, or euphony), they may precede or follow the verb; but the subject of an interrogative verb must come after it, as in English.

Ex.: *Parliamo di lui*, we speak of him.

*Non capiscono*, they don't understand.

*S' io fossi ricco come è egli*, if I were rich as he is.

*Sitte solo* or *sitte voi solo*, are you alone?

(3) The disjunctive reflexive pronoun is *sè*, which is masculine and feminine, singular and plural.

Ex.: *Lo fecero da sè*, they did it by themselves.

a. The objective case must be used: (1) In exclamations without a verb, unless the pronoun be of the second person: as *beato lui*, "happy he!"; *beato tu*, "happy thou!" (2) After *come*, *quanto*, and *che* (= "as" or "than"), if the pronoun be of the third person: as *sono vecchio quanto loro*, "I am as old as they"; *tanto i genitori che lui*, "his parents as well as he." (3) When the pronoun stands in the predicate after the verb *essere*: as *credendo ch' io fossi te*, "thinking I was you." But "it is I," etc., are *sono io*, *sèi tu*, *è lui*, *è lei*, *siamo noi*, *siate voi*, *sono loro*.

b. (1) Clearness or emphasis occasionally requires the disjunctive pronoun instead of the conjunctive ; in this case the conjunctive form is often inserted also.

Ex. : *Parlo a voi signóre*, I speak to you, sir.

*Mi piúce anche a me*, it pleases me too.

(2) The disjunctive form must always be used when the verb has two direct or two indirect objects.

Ex. : *Vedo lui e lei*, I see him and her.

*Lo do a mio padre e a te*, I give it to my father and to thee.

c. In speaking of a company, a class, or a people *noi altri*, *voi altri* (which are also written as one word) are used for *noi*, *voi*.

Ex. : *Noi altri italiani*, we Italians.

*Voi altri pittóri*, you painters.

d. "With me," "with thee," "with himself, herself, themselves" are *meco*, *teco*, *séco*.

e. "Myself," "thyself," etc., used for emphasis with a pronoun or noun, are rendered by the adjective *stesso*.

Ex. : *Noi stessi la vedemmo*, we saw her ourselves.

f. "One another," "each other" is *l' un l' altro*.

Ex. : *Ci amiamo l' un l' altro*, we love one another.

g. In Florence *ella* is often shortened into *la*, which is used of both persons and things.

Ex. : *La non viène*, she doesn't come.

*Pare che la si possa tener in mano*, it looks as if it might be held in the hand.

h. In impersonal phrases like "it is" the subject, "it," is occasionally expressed in Italian ; it is then translated *egli*, which in the spoken language is shortened into *gli*.

Ex. : *Gli è che*, it is because.

52. (1) The usual form of address in Italy is *Élla* \* (or *ella*), objective *Lèi* (or *lei*); in conversation *Élla* is replaced by *Lèi* (or *lei*). This word really means "it," and takes the verb in the third person; but an adjective or past participle modifying it agrees in gender with the person it represents. The plural of *Élla* is *Lóro* (or *loro*), which takes the verb in the third person plural.

Ex.: *Lèi* or *Élla* è *tedesco*, *signore*, you are German, sir.

*Signorina Neri*, *Lèi* (or *Élla*) *fu lasciata sola*, Miss Neri, you were left alone.

*Sono lieto che La stia bene* (see 51, g), I'm glad you are well.

*E Lóro, dove vanno*, and you, where are you going?

*Lóro erano già partiti*, you were already gone.

*Signorine, loro sono molto studiose*, young ladies, you are very studious.

Like other personal pronouns, *Élla* and *Lóro* are very often omitted in the nominative.

*Lèi è troppo gentile* or *è troppo gentile*, you are too kind.

*Come stanno*, how do you (pl.) do?

The conjunctive forms of *Élla* are *La*, *Le* (or *la*, *le*), those of *Lóro* are *Li*, *Le*, *Lóro* (or *li*, *le*, *loro*); they occupy the same positions and undergo the same modifications as the corresponding pronouns of the third person (see 48, 49, 50). The reflexive pronoun of *Élla* and *Lóro* is *si*.

Ex.: *Le prometto di visitarla*, I promise (you) to visit you.

*Gliele do*, I give it to you.

*La prego d'accomodarsi*, I beg you to seat yourself.

*Vidi Lèi e il babbo*, I saw you and your father (see 51, b, 2).

*Dico loro*, I tell you (pl.).

---

\* Standing for *Võstra Signoria*, "your lordship" or "ladyship," or some other title of the feminine gender.



*Le cercáva*, I was looking for you (fem. pl.).

*Si divertono, signorini*, are you enjoying yourselves, young gentlemen?

The possessive of *Élla* is *Súo* (see 45).

Ex. : *La Súa gradúa lettera*, your welcome letter.

(2) *Vói* is the form of address oftenest found in books ; it is used sometimes in conversation also, but only toward inferiors or toward equals with whom one is on familiar terms.\* It is employed for both plural and singular (like English "you"), although its verb is always plural ; an adjective or participle modifying it agrees in gender and number with the person or persons it represents.

Ex. : *Vói qui, Pittro*, You here, Peter?

*Vói sítte alti tútti e due*, you are tall, both of you.

(3) In speaking to an intimate friend, a near relative, a child, or an animal the only form of address is *tu*. *Tu* is used also, like English "thou," in poetry and poetic prose. The plural of *tu* is *vói*.

Ex. : *Ti chidmo Enrico*, I call you Henry.

*Dóve sái tu*, where art thou?

*Vòglio vedérvi, figliuóli míi*, my children, I wish to see you.

## EXERCISE II.

Tant' è<sup>1</sup> ! dicéva<sup>2</sup> tra sè un giòrno Niccolíno ; vòglio<sup>3</sup> vedére se quégli uccellíni son<sup>4</sup> náti. Li guárdo<sup>5</sup> solaménte e riscéndo<sup>6</sup> súbito. — E Niccolíno s' arrámpica<sup>7</sup> su per quell' álbero, tentándo<sup>8</sup> d' arriváre al nido per levársi quélla curiosità. Ma sul più béllo,<sup>9</sup> sènte<sup>10</sup> la vóce del bábbu il quále éra<sup>11</sup> lì prèssu nélia vióttola ;

---

\* Though advocated by some of the best writers and speakers of Italian, the use of *vói* instead of *Léi* and *Lóro* has not become general. In Southern Italy, however, *vói* is the form popularly used.

vuòle<sup>12</sup> scènder lêsto per non fàrsi cògliere in fàllo, ma nêlla fúria si smarrisce,<sup>13</sup> gli mánca<sup>14</sup> il sostégno, precipita<sup>15</sup> a têrra, e cadêndo<sup>16</sup> si fa mále a<sup>17</sup> un piêde. Il dolóre lo fa<sup>18</sup> strillàre; álle grida córrono<sup>19</sup> il bábbò e la mámma che lo raccòlgono<sup>20</sup> esclamándo<sup>21</sup>: — Te l' abbiámo<sup>22</sup> détto le cênto vòlte che a' nldi non ti dovévi<sup>23</sup> voltár nemméno: êcco quel che succêde<sup>24</sup> ai curiosi e a' disubbidienti. — E sòrte per lúi che lo sentírono,<sup>25</sup> perchê così potérono<sup>26</sup> prònti bagnàrgli il piêde coll' ácqua frédدا, e dòpo avérglielo tenúto in quell' ácqua parécchio têmpo, potérono<sup>28</sup> fasciàrglielo strétto; in quêsto môdo e dòpo quálche giòrno di ripòso assòlúto, Niccolino potè<sup>27</sup> ricominciàre a fáre quálche pássò per càsa.

- <sup>1</sup> I don't care. <sup>2</sup> Said. <sup>3</sup> I want. <sup>4</sup> Are. <sup>5</sup> I will look at. <sup>6</sup> Will come down again. <sup>7</sup> Climbs. <sup>8</sup> Trying. <sup>9</sup> *Sul più bello* = at the critical moment. <sup>10</sup> He hears. <sup>11</sup> Was. <sup>12</sup> He tries. <sup>13</sup> He gets confused. <sup>14</sup> Fails. <sup>15</sup> He tumbles. <sup>16</sup> Falling. <sup>17</sup> *Fa mále a* = he injures. <sup>18</sup> Makes. <sup>19</sup> Run. <sup>20</sup> Pick up. <sup>21</sup> Exclaiming. <sup>22</sup> We have. <sup>23</sup> *Non dovévi* = you mustn't. <sup>24</sup> Happens. <sup>25</sup> They heard. <sup>26</sup> They could. <sup>27</sup> Was able.

## EXERCISE 12.

[In this exercise CARLINO and GORO use *vói*; ARMANDO uses *vói* before GORO enters, *L'èi* afterwards.]

*Carlino*. Sir, we are<sup>1</sup> alone.

*Armádo*. So it seems<sup>2</sup> (*looking<sup>3</sup> around*).

*Carlino*. I repeat<sup>4</sup> to you that we are<sup>1</sup> alone (*louder*).

*Armádo*. But I tell<sup>5</sup> you that I admit-it.<sup>6</sup>

*Carlino*. It is<sup>7</sup> time to-raise<sup>8</sup> the mask —

*Armádo*. (Oh-my<sup>9</sup>! this-fellow<sup>10</sup> has<sup>11</sup> recognized me.)

*Carlino*. And to<sup>15</sup> speak plainly.

*Armádo*. That is<sup>7</sup> what I wanted<sup>12</sup> to<sup>15</sup> do, but they interrupted<sup>13</sup> me all-the-time.<sup>14</sup>

*Carlino*. Do<sup>15</sup> you see<sup>16</sup> that grove over-there?

*Armádo*. I see<sup>17</sup> it.

*Carlino*. There nobody will-interrupt<sup>18</sup> you.

*Armádo*. Must<sup>19</sup> I go there to speak (*surprised*)?

*Carlino*. We shall-go<sup>20</sup> together.

*Enter*<sup>15</sup> GORO with two guns.

*Carlino.* (*Taking*<sup>21</sup> *one of-them*) Take<sup>22</sup> the other.

*Armádo.* Thanks, I am<sup>23</sup> not<sup>24</sup> a<sup>25</sup> hunter.

*Goro.* Take<sup>22</sup> it, or-else<sup>26</sup> — (*brandishing*<sup>27</sup> *a thick club*).

*Armádo.* Willingly — to<sup>28</sup> satisfy you — excuse-me,<sup>29</sup> is<sup>7</sup> it loaded?

*Carlino.* To-be-brief,<sup>30</sup> you hate<sup>31</sup> me; you must<sup>32</sup> hate me. I hate<sup>33</sup> you. So<sup>47</sup> over-there in that grove — at eighty paces from-each-other<sup>34</sup> — bang!<sup>35</sup> Either you kill<sup>36</sup> me or I kill<sup>37</sup> you.

*Armádo.* But I have<sup>38</sup> n't<sup>34</sup> these sinister intentions, which-are<sup>15</sup> contrary to my principles.

*Carlino.* In that<sup>50</sup> case you will-permit<sup>39</sup> this-man-to-amuse-himself-by-shaking<sup>40</sup> the dust from your<sup>41</sup> black coat with that club.

*Armádo.* No, indeed; what-are-you-thinking-of<sup>42</sup>? It would-be<sup>43</sup> too much-trouble<sup>44</sup>! (*Goro brandishes*<sup>45</sup> *the club*) Be-easy<sup>46</sup> with the club.

*Carlino.* No? Then<sup>47</sup> Carolina must<sup>48</sup> be mine.

*Armádo.* You're-welcome-to-her.<sup>49</sup>

*Carlino.* In that<sup>50</sup> case we are friends; but be-off<sup>51</sup> from<sup>52</sup> here, do-you-understand<sup>53</sup>?

*Armádo.* (What a<sup>54</sup> nice way they have<sup>55</sup> in this country!)

<sup>1</sup> *Sidmo.* <sup>2</sup> *Páre.* <sup>3</sup> *Guardádo.* <sup>4</sup> *Ripêto.* <sup>5</sup> *Dico.* <sup>6</sup> *Ne convengo.* <sup>7</sup> *È.*

<sup>8</sup> To (*dì*) raise to one's self. . . . <sup>9</sup> *Ahi.* <sup>10</sup> See 42, 2. <sup>11</sup> *Ha.* <sup>12</sup> *Volêvo.*

<sup>13</sup> *Hánno interròtto.* <sup>14</sup> Always. <sup>15</sup> Omit. <sup>16</sup> *Vedête.* <sup>17</sup> *Vêdo.* <sup>18</sup> *Interromperè.* <sup>19</sup> *Dêvo.* <sup>20</sup> *Andrêmo.* <sup>21</sup> *Prendêdo.* <sup>22</sup> *Prendête.* <sup>23</sup> *Sôno.*

<sup>24</sup> *Non,* "not," must precede the verb. <sup>25</sup> See 16, a. <sup>26</sup> *Alirimènti.*

<sup>27</sup> *Agitádo.* <sup>28</sup> *Per.* <sup>29</sup> *Sciùsi.* <sup>30</sup> *Alle corte.* <sup>31</sup> *Odidte.* <sup>32</sup> *Dovête.*

<sup>33</sup> *Ôdio.* <sup>34</sup> The one from the other. <sup>35</sup> *Brun.* <sup>36</sup> *Ammazzâte.* <sup>37</sup> *Am-*

*mazzo.* <sup>38</sup> *Ho.* <sup>39</sup> *Permetterête.* <sup>40</sup> That this man amuses (*divërta*) him-

self to shake. <sup>41</sup> See 45, c. <sup>42</sup> Seems-it (*páre*) to you? <sup>43</sup> *Sarêbbe.*

<sup>44</sup> *Incômodo.* <sup>45</sup> *Ágita.* <sup>46</sup> *Stia buôno.* <sup>47</sup> *Dûnque.* <sup>48</sup> *Dêve.* <sup>49</sup> Take

(*pigli*, subj.) her then (*pûre*) for-yourself. <sup>50</sup> *Tal.* <sup>51</sup> *Via.* <sup>52</sup> *Di.*

<sup>53</sup> *Intendêste.* <sup>54</sup> 43, b. <sup>55</sup> *Hánno.*

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

**53.** The irregular verbs *essere*, "to be," and *avere*, "to have," are the ones most used as auxiliaries in Italian. They are conjugated as follows:—

**a. Infinitives:** *essere*, to be; *essere stato*, to have been.

**Participles:** *essendo*, being; *essendo stato*, having been; *stato*, been.

## Indicative.

| PRESENT.      | IMPERFECT.      | PRETERITE.     | FUTURE.         |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sono,</i>  | <i>Èra,</i>     | <i>Fui,</i>    | <i>Sarò,</i>    |
| <i>sai,</i>   | <i>eri,</i>     | <i>fosti,</i>  | <i>sarai,</i>   |
| <i>è,</i>     | <i>era,</i>     | <i>fu,</i>     | <i>sarà,</i>    |
| <i>siamo,</i> | <i>eravamo.</i> | <i>fummo.</i>  | <i>saremo,</i>  |
| <i>siete,</i> | <i>eravate.</i> | <i>foste,</i>  | <i>sarete,</i>  |
| <i>sono.</i>  | <i>erano.</i>   | <i>furono.</i> | <i>saranno.</i> |

| PERFECT.                    | PLUPERFECT.                  | PRETERITE PERFECT.         | FUTURE PERFECT.             |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sono stato (stata),</i>  | <i>Èra stato (stata),</i>    | <i>Fui stato (stata),</i>  | <i>Sarò stato (stata),</i>  |
| etc.                        | etc.                         | etc.                       | etc.                        |
| <i>siamo stati (stati),</i> | <i>eravamo stati(state),</i> | <i>fummo stati(stati),</i> | <i>saremo stati(stati),</i> |
| etc.                        | etc.                         | etc.                       | etc.                        |

## Imperative.

## Subjunctive.

## Conditional.

|                    | PRESENT.               | IMPERFECT.      |                   |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sii or sia.</i> | <i>Sia,</i>            | <i>Fossi,</i>   | <i>Sarei,</i>     |
|                    | <i>sia,</i>            | <i>fossi,</i>   | <i>saresti,</i>   |
|                    | <i>sia,</i>            | <i>fosse,</i>   | <i>sarebbe.</i>   |
|                    | <i>siamo,</i>          | <i>fossimo,</i> | <i>saremmo,</i>   |
| <i>siete.</i>      | <i>siete,</i>          | <i>foste,</i>   | <i>sareste,</i>   |
|                    | <i>siano or sieno.</i> | <i>fossero.</i> | <i>sarebbero.</i> |

|  | PERFECT.                  | PLUPERFECT.                 | PERFECT.                    |
|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|  | <i>Sia stato (stata),</i> | <i>Fossi stato (stata),</i> | <i>Sarei stato (stata),</i> |
|  | etc.                      | etc.                        | etc.                        |

b. **Infinitives:** *avére*, to have; *avére avúto*, to have had.

**Participles:** *avéndo*, having; *avéndo avúto*, having had; *avúto*, had.

### Indicative.

| PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.          | PRETERITE.         | FUTURE.            |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Hò,</i>       | <i>Avéva,</i>       | <i>Èbbi,</i>       | <i>Avrà,</i>       |
| <i>hai,</i>      | <i>avévi,</i>       | <i>avésti,</i>     | <i>avrà,</i>       |
| <i>ha,</i>       | <i>avéva,</i>       | <i>ebbe,</i>       | <i>avrà,</i>       |
| <i>abbidmo,</i>  | <i>avevámto,</i>    | <i>avémmo.</i>     | <i>avrémto,</i>    |
| <i>avéte,</i>    | <i>avevátte,</i>    | <i>avéste,</i>     | <i>avréte,</i>     |
| <i>hánno.</i>    | <i>avévano.</i>     | <i>ebbero.</i>     | <i>avránno.</i>    |
| PERFECT.         | PLUPERFECT.         | PRETERITE PERFECT. | FUTURE PERFECT.    |
| <i>Ho avúto,</i> | <i>Avéva avúto,</i> | <i>Èbbi avúto,</i> | <i>Avrà avúto,</i> |
| etc.             | etc.                | etc.               | etc.               |

### Imperative.

### Subjunctive.

### Conditional.

|                 | PRESENT.              | IMPERFECT.           |                      |
|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|                 | <i>Ábbia,</i>         | <i>Avéssi,</i>       | <i>Avréti,</i>       |
| <i>Ábbi,</i>    | <i>abbi or ábbia,</i> | <i>avéssi,</i>       | <i>avrésti,</i>      |
|                 | <i>ábbia,</i>         | <i>avésse,</i>       | <i>avrèbbe,</i>      |
|                 | <i>abbidmo,</i>       | <i>avéssimo,</i>     | <i>avrémmo,</i>      |
| <i>abbidte.</i> | <i>abbidte.</i>       | <i>avéste,</i>       | <i>avréste,</i>      |
|                 | <i>abbiano.</i>       | <i>avéssero.</i>     | <i>avrèbbero.</i>    |
|                 | PERFECT.              | PLUPERFECT.          | PERFECT.             |
|                 | <i>Ábbia avúto,</i>   | <i>Avéssi avúto,</i> | <i>Avréti avúto,</i> |
|                 | etc.                  | etc.                 | etc.                 |

54. (1) The auxiliary of the passive is *essere*, "to be."

Ex.: *Sóno amáto*, I am loved.

(2) The future ("shall," "will") and the conditional ("should," "would") are formed in Italian without any auxiliary.

Ex.: *Ío andrò ed egli verrà*, I shall go, and he will come.

*Vorrti vederlo*, I should like to see him.

(3) The auxiliary of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses is *avere*, "to have," if the verb be active and transitive. If the verb be intransitive, the auxiliary is nearly always *essere*. If the verb be passive, reflexive, or reciprocal, the auxiliary is always *essere*.

Ex.: *Ho parlato*, I have spoken.

*Avévano fatto queste cose*, they had done these things.

*Sarò venuto*, I shall have come; *è nevicato*, it has snowed.

*Mi sono fatto male*, I have hurt myself.

*Le donne si erano sbagliate*, the women had made a mistake.

a. A past participle used with the auxiliary *essere* must agree with the subject in gender and number.

Ex.: *La ragazza è tornata*, the girl has returned.

*Le donne si sono disputate*, the women have disputed.

*La sorella si è fatta male*, our sister has hurt herself.

b. A past participle used with *avere* may or may not agree with its direct object, according to the choice of the writer.

Ex.: *La birra che aveva bevuto* or *bevuta*, the beer I had drunk.

*Ho veduto* or *vedute molte cose*, I have seen many things.

c. The English auxiliary "do" is never expressed in Italian.

Ex.: *Non viene*, he does not come.

d. (1) The English periphrastic form ("am," "was," etc., followed by the present participle), denoting duration, is expressed in Italian either by the simple verb or by the proper tense of *stare*, "to be" (see §2, 4), followed by the present participle. But the periphrastic form denoting mere futurity must be rendered by the simple present or future.\*

---

\* If, however, this form be past in English, only through being dependent on a main verb in a past tense, it must be rendered by the conditional: as *disse che verrebbe*, "he said he was coming."

Ex.: *Io camminavo*, I was walking.  
*Sta lavorando*, he is working.  
*Leggevano* or *stavano leggendo*, they were reading.  
*Dice che viene* or *verrà*, he says he is coming.

(2) "To be," expressing a state or condition, is often rendered by *stare*, instead of *essere*. *Stare per* or *essere per* (followed by the infinitive) means "to be on the point of."

Ex.: *Come sta?* — *Sto bene, e Lei?* — "How are you?" "I'm well, and you?"  
*Stava per uscire*, I was just going out.

e. A verb with the auxiliary "used to" (or "would" = "used to") is translated either by the simple imperfect or by the infinitive with *solere*, "to be accustomed" (see 92, 14).

Ex.: *Vi andava* or *soltava andare ogni sera*, he used to go there every evening.

f. *Venire*, "to come" (see 92, 154), and *rimanere*, "to remain" (see 92, 16), are sometimes used as auxiliaries in the simple tenses of the passive, instead of *essere*.

Ex.: *Il ladro venne arrestato*, the thief was arrested.  
*Rimasi sorpreso*, I was surprised.

g. The third person of the passive is very often replaced by the reflexive construction with *si*. This construction is generally used also to render the English "they," "people," "we," in an indefinite sense, followed by a verb. It is employed even with a neuter verb.

Ex.: *Questo libro si legge*, this book is read.  
*Quelle cose si facevano*, those things were done.  
*Si racconta*, it is related.  
*La spada che mi si diede*, the sword that was given me.  
*Si va spesso in campagna*, people often go into the country.  
*Si vedono moltissime cose*, we see very many things.  
*Se ne parla*, people talk about it.

*h.* "To have a thing done" is *far fare una cosa* (see 92, 2).

*Ex.*: *Il re lo fece ammazzare*, the king had him killed.

**55.** Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of an active transitive verb. In the paradigms given henceforth these tenses will be omitted. The use of the tenses is explained 69-77.

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Infinitive</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Avère trováto</i> , to have found.       |
| <b>Participle</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Avèndo trováto</i> , having found.       |
| <b>Indicative</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Ho trováto</i> , I have found.           |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Avéva trováto</i> , I had found.         |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:          | <i>Èbbi trováto</i> , I had found.          |
| FUTURE PERFECT:             | <i>Avrò trováto</i> , I shall have found.   |
| <b>Conditional</b> PERFECT: | <i>Avrèi trováto</i> , I should have found. |
| <b>Subjunctive</b> PERFECT: | <i>Àbbia trováto</i> , I have found.        |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Avèssi trováto</i> , I had found.        |

**56.** Following are synopses of the compound tenses of neuter, reflexive, and passive verbs. In the paradigms given henceforth these forms will be omitted.

*a.* Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of the neuter verb *venire*, "to come":—

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Infinitive</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Èssere venúto</i> , to have come.      |
| <b>Participle</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Essèndo venúto</i> , having come.      |
| <b>Indicative</b> PERFECT:  | <i>Sòno venúto</i> , I have come.         |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Èra venúto</i> , I had come.           |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:          | <i>Fui venúto</i> , I had come.           |
| FUTURE PERFECT:             | <i>Sarò venúto</i> , I shall have come.   |
| <b>Conditional</b> PERFECT: | <i>Sarèi venúto</i> , I should have come. |
| <b>Subjunctive</b> PERFECT: | <i>Sia venúto</i> , I have come.          |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Fóssi venúto</i> , I had come.         |

*b.* Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of the reflexive verbs *alzarsi* ("to raise one's self"), "to get up," and *andarsene*, "to go away":—



(1) *Alzarsi.*

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Infinitive PERFECT:</b>  | <i>Essersi alzato</i> , to have got up.        |
| <b>Participle PERFECT:</b>  | <i>Essendosi alzato</i> , having got up.       |
| <b>Indicative PERFECT:</b>  | <i>Mi sono alzato</i> , I have got up.         |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Mi era alzato</i> , I had got up.           |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:          | <i>Mi fui alzato</i> , I had got up.           |
| FUTURE PERFECT:             | <i>Mi sarò alzato</i> , I shall have got up.   |
| <b>Conditional PERFECT:</b> | <i>Mi sarei alzato</i> , I should have got up. |
| <b>Subjunctive PERFECT:</b> | <i>Mi sia alzato</i> , I have got up.          |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Mi fossi alzato</i> , I had got up.         |

(2) *Andarsene.\**

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Infinitive PERFECT:</b>  | <i>Essersene andato</i> , to have gone away.         |
| <b>Participle PERFECT:</b>  | <i>Essendosi andato</i> , having gone away.          |
| <b>Indicative PERFECT:</b>  | <i>Me ne sono andato</i> , I have gone away.         |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Me ne era andato</i> , I had gone away.           |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:          | <i>Me ne fui andato</i> , I had gone away.           |
| FUTURE PERFECT:             | <i>Me ne sarò andato</i> , I shall have gone away.   |
| <b>Conditional PERFECT:</b> | <i>Me ne sarei andato</i> , I should have gone away. |
| <b>Subjunctive PERFECT:</b> | <i>Me ne sia andato</i> , I have gone away.          |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Me ne fossi andato</i> , I had gone away.         |

c. Following is a synopsis of the entire passive of *amare*, "to love":—

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Infinitive PRESENT:</b> | <i>Essere amato</i> , to be loved.                 |
| PERFECT:                   | <i>Essere stato amato</i> , to have been loved.    |
| <b>Participle PRESENT:</b> | <i>Essendo amato</i> , being loved.                |
| PERFECT:                   | <i>Essendo stato amato</i> , having been loved.    |
| <b>Indicative PRESENT:</b> | <i>Sono amato</i> , I am loved.                    |
| PERFECT:                   | <i>Sono stato amato</i> , I have been loved.       |
| IMPERFECT:                 | <i>Era amato</i> , I was loved.                    |
| PLUPERFECT:                | <i>Era stato amato</i> , I had been loved.         |
| PRETERITE:                 | <i>Fui amato</i> , I was loved.                    |
| PRETERITE PERFECT:         | <i>Fui stato amato</i> , I had been loved.         |
| FUTURE:                    | <i>Sarò amato</i> , I shall be loved.              |
| FUTURE PERFECT:            | <i>Sarò stato amato</i> , I shall have been loved. |

---

\* *Andarsene* is composed of the verb *andare*, "to go," the reflexive *si*, and the adverb *ne*, "thence" (see 47, a).

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Conditional:</b>         | <i>Sarèi amato</i> , I should be loved.              |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Sarèi stato amato</i> , I should have been loved. |
| <b>Imperative:</b>          | <i>Sii amato</i> , be loved.                         |
| <b>Subjunctive</b> PRESENT: | <i>Sia amato</i> , I am loved.                       |
| PERFECT:                    | <i>Sia stato amato</i> , I have been loved.          |
| IMPERFECT:                  | <i>Fossi amato</i> , I were loved.                   |
| PLUPERFECT:                 | <i>Fossi stato amato</i> , I had been loved.         |

57. "May" and "can" are generally rendered by *potere*, "to be able" (see 92, 21); "must," "should" (expressing duty), and "ought," by *dovere*, "to owe" (see 92, 8); "will" (expressing volition) by *volere*, "to wish" (see 92, 19).<sup>\*</sup> These verbs are not defective, like the English modal auxiliaries; hence in Italian the tense is expressed by the auxiliary itself, and not by the following infinitive. No preposition intervenes between these verbs and the dependent infinitive.

Ex.: *Può essere vero*, it may be true.

*Non poteva parlare*, he could not speak.

*Hanno potuto dormire*, they have been able to sleep.

*Aurèi potuto dirlo*, I could have said it.

*Potremo andare*, we shall be able to go.

*Deve pagarlo*, he must pay him.

*Dovemmo venire*, we had to come.

*Dovrebbe farlo*, he should do it, he ought to do it.

*Dovete trovarla*, you will have to find her.

*Averebbe dovuto tacere*, he ought to have kept still.

*Voglio partire*, I will go, I wish to go.

*Vorrà tornare*, he will want to return.

*Averemmo voluto restare*, we should have liked to stay.

*Vorrei sapere*, I should like to know.

---

\* "Shall" expressing an order or prohibition is rendered by *dovere*, by the simple future, or by a phrase consisting of a verb of wishing and a dependent subjunctive: as *non ci andrà*, "he shall not go there"; *deve capire* or *vuoglio che capisca*, "he shall understand."

a. "Must" is also expressed by the impersonal verb *bisognare*, "to be necessary," followed by the infinitive or by *che*, "that," with the subjunctive. "To have to" is *avere da*.

Ex. : *Bisogna farlo*, it must be done.

*Bisogna che andiamo*, we must go.

*Ho da scrivere una lettera*, I have to write a letter.

b. "To be able" meaning "to know how" is *sapere* (see 92, 6). "Not to be able to help" doing a thing is *non poter a meno di non* (with infinitive) or *non poter fare a meno di* (with infinitive).

Ex. : *Non seppe farlo*, he couldn't do it.

*Sa leggere e scrivere*, he can read and write.

*Non potè a meno di non ridere*, he couldn't help laughing.

### EXERCISE 13.

Giorgetto è un bambino vispo, vispo. E sollecito; alle sette è già levato, ed è già andato nel giardino. È maggio, e il giardino è tutto fiorito; rose, gigli, viole mandano<sup>1</sup> un odore soave. Giorgetto si strugge<sup>2</sup> di cogliere i fiori; ma la mamma non vuole<sup>3</sup>: la mamma lo ha lasciato andar nel giardino, a patto che non cogliesse<sup>4</sup> i fiori. A un tratto Giorgetto vede<sup>5</sup> una rosa più bella di tutte le altre, non resiste<sup>6</sup> più al desiderio di pigliarla. La mamma non lo saprà,<sup>7</sup> non lo può<sup>8</sup> sapere, — dice<sup>9</sup> fra sé Giorgetto; e stende<sup>10</sup> la mano al cespuglio, ed è per coglierla. Ma che è stato? Ritira<sup>11</sup> lèsto la mano, e grida,<sup>12</sup> e piange.<sup>13</sup> La rosa ha le spine: il suo gambo nascosto tra bellissime foglie è tutto pieno di spine; e le spine gli hanno bucato tutta la mano. La mano è sanguinosa; e Giorgetto piange,<sup>13</sup> e la mamma ora si avvedrà<sup>14</sup> che il suo bambino è disobbediente.

<sup>1</sup> Send forth. <sup>2</sup> Is dying. <sup>3</sup> Is willing. <sup>4</sup> He should pick. <sup>5</sup> Sees. <sup>6</sup> Resists. <sup>7</sup> Will know. <sup>8</sup> Can. <sup>9</sup> Says. <sup>10</sup> Stretches out. <sup>11</sup> He draws back. <sup>12</sup> Screams. <sup>13</sup> Cries. <sup>14</sup> Will see.

## EXERCISE 14.

Silvio Pellico was<sup>1</sup> confined in prison ; and there, in the silence of his<sup>2</sup> dungeon, he found<sup>3</sup> a friend, a companion—a spider. Yes, a spider made<sup>4</sup> his web in a corner of the prison, and Silvio did<sup>5</sup> not-destroy-it<sup>6</sup> ; on-the-contrary,<sup>7</sup> he used-to-throw<sup>8</sup> him crumbs<sup>9</sup> of bread, and little by little he became-so-attached<sup>10</sup> to that spider, and the spider to him, that the creature used-to-come-down<sup>11</sup> from his web and go<sup>12</sup> to find Pellico,<sup>13</sup> and would-go<sup>13</sup> on his<sup>14</sup> hand and take<sup>15</sup> food<sup>9</sup> from his<sup>14</sup> fingers. One day the jailer removed<sup>16</sup> the unhappy Pellico. The prisoner thought-of<sup>17</sup> his spider, and said<sup>18</sup> : “ Now that I am-going-away,<sup>19</sup> he will-come-back<sup>20</sup> perhaps, and will-find<sup>21</sup> the prison empty ; or if there-is<sup>22</sup> somebody else here,<sup>23</sup> he may<sup>24</sup> be an enemy of spiders,<sup>9</sup> and tear down that beautiful web and crush the poor beast.”

<sup>1</sup> Preterite. <sup>2</sup> See 45, b. <sup>3</sup> Trovò. <sup>4</sup> Fecce. <sup>5</sup> See 54, c. <sup>6</sup> Not to-him it destroyed (*disfecce*). <sup>7</sup> Anzi. <sup>8</sup> Buttava : see 54, c. <sup>9</sup> See 13, b. <sup>10</sup> Tanto si affezionò. <sup>11</sup> Si movéva : see 54, c. <sup>12</sup> Andava. <sup>13</sup> See 13, c. <sup>14</sup> See 45, c. <sup>15</sup> Prendeva. <sup>16</sup> Mutò di stanza. <sup>17</sup> Pensava a. <sup>18</sup> Diceva. <sup>19</sup> See 54, d, 1 : me ne vado. <sup>20</sup> Ritornerà. <sup>21</sup> Troverà. <sup>22</sup> Vi sarà. <sup>23</sup> Omit. <sup>24</sup> Potrebbe : see 57.

## REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

58. Italian verbs are divided into four conjugations, according as the infinitive ending is *-dre*, accented *-ère*, unaccented *-ere*, or *-ire*. Regular verbs of the second and third conjugations are, however, inflected just alike.

a. The final *e* of the infinitive may be dropped before any word except one beginning with *s* impure.\*

\* Cf. 10, b; 14, b. Italians find it hard to pronounce three consecutive consonants of which the middle one is *s*.

## THE REGULAR VERB.

59. *Parlare*, "to speak," will serve as a model for the first conjugation. All compound tenses are omitted (see 55):—

## Infinitive and Participles.

*Parlare, parlando, parlato.*

## Indicative.

| PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.        | PRETERITE.        | FUTURE.            |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Parlo,</i>    | <i>Parlava,</i>   | <i>Parlai,</i>    | <i>Parlerò,</i>    |
| <i>parli,</i>    | <i>parlavi,</i>   | <i>parlasti,</i>  | <i>parlerai,</i>   |
| <i>parla,</i>    | <i>parlava,</i>   | <i>parlò,</i>     | <i>parlerà,</i>    |
| <i>parliamo,</i> | <i>parlavamo,</i> | <i>parlammo,</i>  | <i>parleremo,</i>  |
| <i>parlate,</i>  | <i>parlavate,</i> | <i>parlaste,</i>  | <i>parlerete,</i>  |
| <i>parlano.</i>  | <i>parlavano.</i> | <i>parlarono.</i> | <i>parleranno.</i> |

## Imperative.

## Subjunctive.

## Conditional.

|                 | PRESENT.         | IMPERFECT.         |                      |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
|                 | <i>Parli,</i>    | <i>Parlassi,</i>   | <i>Parlerai,</i>     |
| <i>Parla,</i>   | <i>parli,</i>    | <i>parlassi,</i>   | <i>parleresti,</i>   |
|                 | <i>parli,</i>    | <i>parlasse,</i>   | <i>parlerèbbe,</i>   |
|                 | <i>parliamo,</i> | <i>parlassimo,</i> | <i>parleremmo,</i>   |
| <i>parlate.</i> | <i>parliate,</i> | <i>parlaste,</i>   | <i>parlereste,</i>   |
|                 | <i>parlino.</i>  | <i>parlassero.</i> | <i>parlerèbbero.</i> |

a. Verbs whose infinitives end in *-care* or *-gare* insert *h* after the *c* or *g* in all forms where those letters precede *e* or *i*: as *pàghia* (*pagare*), "let him pay"; *cercherò* (*cercare*), "I shall search." Verbs in *-ciare* and *-giare* drop the *i* before *e* or *i*: as *mangi* (*mangiare*), "thou eatest"; *comincerà*\* (*cominciare*), "he will

---

\* Some writers retain the *i* before *e*: as *comincerà*.

begin." Verbs in *-chiare* and *-gliare* drop the *i* only before another *i*: as *picchi* (*picchiare*), "let him strike"; *più* (*piùgiare*), "thou takest"; but *picchierà*, *piùglierà*.

*b.* The verbs *giocare*, *rinnovare*, *rotare*, *sonare* (also written *giuocare*, etc.) and a few others change *o* of the stem into *uo* in all forms where that vowel is accented: as *suoni*, "let him play"; *giuocano*, "they play."

**60.** Verbs of the second and third conjugations \* are inflected like *credere*, "to believe":—

### Infinitive and Participles.

*Credere*,            *credendo*,            *creduto*.

### Indicative.

| PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.         | PRETERITE.                                 | FUTURE.             |
|-------------------|--------------------|--|---------------------|
| <i>Credo</i> ,    | <i>Credéva</i> ,   | <i>Credèi</i><br>( <i>credétti</i> ),      | <i>Credèrò</i> ,    |
| <i>crédi</i> ,    | <i>credévi</i> ,   | <i>credèsti</i> ,                          | <i>credèrài</i> ,   |
| <i>crède</i> ,    | <i>credéva</i> ,   | <i>credè</i><br>( <i>credétte</i> ),       | <i>credèrà</i> ,    |
| <i>crediamo</i> , | <i>credevàmo</i> , | <i>credémmo</i> ,                          | <i>credèremo</i> ,  |
| <i>credéte</i> ,  | <i>credevàte</i> , | <i>credèste</i> ,                          | <i>credèrete</i> ,  |
| <i>credono</i> .  | <i>credévano</i> . | <i>credèrono</i><br>( <i>credéttero</i> ). | <i>credèranno</i> . |

### Imperative.

### Subjunctive.

### Conditional.

|                  | PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.          |                       |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Crédi</i> ,   | <i>Créda</i> ,    | <i>Credéssi</i> ,   | <i>Credèrèi</i> ,     |
|                  | <i>créda</i> ,    | <i>credéssi</i> ,   | <i>credèrèsti</i> ,   |
|                  | <i>créda</i> ,    | <i>credésse</i> ,   | <i>credèrèbbe</i> ,   |
|                  | <i>crediamo</i> , | <i>credéssimo</i> , | <i>credèrèmmo</i> ,   |
| <i>credéte</i> . | <i>crediate</i> , | <i>credèste</i> ,   | <i>credèreste</i> ,   |
|                  | <i>credano</i> .  | <i>credéssero</i> . | <i>credèrèbbero</i> . |

---

\* Most grammars and dictionaries class these two together as the "second conjugation."

*Battere, compiere, convergere, divergere, mescolare, moltiplicare, pascolare, prescendere, riflettere, ripetere, tessere, tondere*, and their compounds have in the first and third persons singular and the third person plural of the preterite only the forms in *-ei, -è, -erono*; all other regular verbs of the second and third conjugations have the double forms.

61. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation \* are inflected like *finire*, "to finish":—

### Infinitive and Participles.

*Finire,                      finendo,                      finito.*

### Indicative.

| PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.       | PRETERITE.       | FUTURE.           |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Finisco,</i>   | <i>Finiva,</i>   | <i>Finii,</i>    | <i>Finirò,</i>    |
| <i>finisci,</i>   | <i>finivi,</i>   | <i>finisti,</i>  | <i>finirai,</i>   |
| <i>finisce,</i>   | <i>finiva,</i>   | <i>finì,</i>     | <i>finirà,</i>    |
| <i>finidmo,</i>   | <i>finivamo,</i> | <i>finimmo,</i>  | <i>finiremo,</i>  |
| <i>finite,</i>    | <i>finivete,</i> | <i>finiste,</i>  | <i>finirete,</i>  |
| <i>finiscono.</i> | <i>finivano.</i> | <i>finirono.</i> | <i>finiranno.</i> |

### Imperative.

### Subjunctive.

### Conditional.

|                 | PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.        |                     |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
|                 | <i>Finisca,</i>   | <i>Finissi,</i>   | <i>Finirei,</i>     |
| <i>Finisci,</i> | <i>finisca,</i>   | <i>finissi,</i>   | <i>finirèsti,</i>   |
|                 | <i>finisca,</i>   | <i>finisse,</i>   | <i>finirebbe,</i>   |
|                 | <i>finidmo,</i>   | <i>finissimo,</i> | <i>finiremmo,</i>   |
| <i>finite.</i>  | <i>finidte,</i>   | <i>finiste,</i>   | <i>finirèste,</i>   |
|                 | <i>finiscano.</i> | <i>finissero.</i> | <i>finirebbero.</i> |

But *aborrìre, † assorbìre, † avvertìre, bollìre, divertìre, dormire, fuggìre, mentìre, † partìre, † pentìre, pervertìre, sentìre, servìre, sortìre, † sovvertìre, vestìre*, and their compounds,

\* Most grammars and dictionaries call this the "third conjugation."

† *Aborrìre, assorbìre, mentìre, sortìre* may also be conjugated like *finire*. *Partìre*, "to distribute," is inflected like *finire*; *partìre*, "to depart," like *sentìre*.

though inflected like *finire* in all other parts, are in the present indicative, imperative, and subjunctive conjugated after the following model : —

| Indicative.      | Imperative.     | Subjunctive.     |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>Sento,</i>    |                 | <i>Senta,</i>    |
| <i>senti,</i>    | <i>Senti,</i>   | <i>senta,</i>    |
| <i>sente,</i>    |                 | <i>senta,</i>    |
| <i>sentiâmo,</i> |                 | <i>sentiâmo,</i> |
| <i>sentite,</i>  | <i>sentite.</i> | <i>sentite,</i>  |
| <i>sentonno.</i> |                 | <i>sentonno.</i> |

62. The present participle of all verbs is invariable.

63. In all conjugations a form of the first person singular of the imperfect indicative ending in *o* instead of *a* is often used in conversation : as *leggevo*, "I was reading." Final *o* of the third person plural of the various tenses is frequently omitted : as *vengono da me*, "they come to me."

a. In the preterite *-no* is occasionally dropped, especially in poetry : as *parlâro*, "they spoke." Final *o* of the first person plural of the present subjunctive is sometimes omitted in poetry : as *andiam*, "let us go."

b. In old Italian, in poetry, and in some modern prose *v* of the imperfect indicative is sometimes omitted in verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, but only in the first and third persons singular and the third person plural : as *lo avêano fatto*, "they had done it."

c. In old Italian and in poetry the conditional endings *-êi*, *-êbbe*, *-êbbero* are often replaced by *-ia*, *-ia*, *-iano* : as *credertiâ*, "he would believe."

d. In old Italian and in poetry the third person plural ending *-ero* is sometimes replaced by *-ono* : as *avrêbbono*, "they would have" ; *che andâssonno*, "that they should go."



## THE IRREGULAR VERB.

**64.** Certain parts of Italian irregular verbs are always regular: the example given below will show which they are. *Essere* (see 53, a) is an exception to all rules.

**65.** Many irregular verbs that belong or once belonged to the third conjugation have the infinitive contracted (*fare* for *facere*, *dire* for *dicere*, *condurre* for *condúcere*): in this case the future and conditional are formed from this contracted infinitive (*farò*, *dirò*, *condurrébbe*), while the present participle, the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, and certain persons of the present and preterite are formed from the uncontracted stem (*facendo*, *diceva*, *conduciamo*).

**66.** *Porre* (for *pónere*), "to put," a verb of the third conjugation, will serve to show which are the regular and which the irregular parts of irregular verbs: the forms printed in italics are regular in all verbs except *essere* (see, however, 66, 2, 3, 4); those in Roman type may be irregular.

## Infinitive and Participles.

*Porre*,                      *ponéndo*,                      *pósto*.

## Indicative.

| PRESENT.          | IMPERFECT.         | PRETERITE.       | FUTURE.           |
|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Póngo</i> ,    | <i>Ponéva</i> ,    | <i>Pósi</i> ,    | <i>Porrò</i> ,    |
| <i>póni</i> ,     | <i>ponévi</i> ,    | <i>ponésti</i> , | <i>porrái</i> ,   |
| <i>póne</i> ,     | <i>ponéva</i> ,    | <i>póse</i> ,    | <i>porrà</i> ,    |
| <i>poniámo</i> ,* | <i>ponevámó</i> ,  | <i>ponémmo</i> , | <i>porrémo</i> ,  |
| <i>ponéte</i> ,   | <i>ponevátte</i> , | <i>ponéste</i> , | <i>porréte</i> ,  |
| <i>póngono</i> .  | <i>ponévano</i> .  | <i>pósero</i> .  | <i>porránno</i> . |

---

\* See 66, a.

| Imperative. | Subjunctive. |                   | Conditional. |
|-------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------|
|             | PRESENT.     | IMPERFECT.        |              |
| Póni,       | Pónga,       | <i>Ponéssi,</i>   | Porrèi,      |
|             | pónga,       | <i>ponéssi,</i>   | porrésti,    |
|             | pónga,       | <i>ponésse,</i>   | porrèbbe,    |
|             | poniámo,*    | <i>ponémmo,</i>   | porrémmo,    |
| ponéte.     | poniáte,*    | <i>ponéste,</i>   | porréste,    |
|             | póngano.     | <i>ponéssero.</i> | porrèbbero.  |

It will be seen that the present participle, the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, and certain persons of the present and preterite indicative are always regular.

(1) *Dàre* and *stàre* have in the future and conditional *darò, darèi; starò, starèi*. Otherwise the only irregularity in the future and conditional is that they are contracted in many verbs even when the infinitive is uncontracted: as *vedére*, "to see," *vedrò; venire*, "to come," *verrèi*.

(2) From the first person singular of the preterite the other irregular persons can be constructed, the third person singular by changing the ending *i* to *e*, the third person plural by adding *-ro* to the third person singular. It is to be noted that the *regular* persons of the preterite and the whole imperfect subjunctive are slightly irregular in *dàre* and *stàre*, which substitute *e* for *a* in those forms (*désti, démmo, déste, déssi; stésti, stémmo, stéste, stéssi*).

(3) *Dire* (for *dicere*) and *fàre* (for *facere*) have irregular forms, *díte* and *fáte*, in the second person plural of the present indicative.

(4) *Empíre* has a present participle *empièndo*.

a. The forms marked with an asterisk (first person plural of the present indicative, and first and second persons plural of the

---

\* See 66, a.

present subjunctive) are irregular only in *avére*, *dolére*, *dovére*, *fàre*, *giacére*, *piacére*, *potére*, *sapére*, *solére*, *tacére*, *valére*, *volére*. In *fàre* (for *fàcere*), *giacére*, *piacére*, and *tacére* the irregularity consists in doubling the *c* before *ia*; *sapére* doubles the *p*; *dolére*, *solére*, *valére*, and *volére* substitute *glia* for *lia*. In *avére*, *dovére*, and *potére* the stem is changed: *abbiamo*, *abbiate*; *dobbiamo*, *dobbiate*; *possiamo*, *possiate*.

b. The two persons of the imperative are exactly like the corresponding persons of the present indicative, except in *avére*, *sapére*, and *volére*, where they follow the subjunctive (*abbì*, *abbiate*; *sappi*, *sappiate*; *vogli*, *vogliate*), and in *andàre*, *dàre*, *dìre*, *fàre*, and *stàre*, which have in the singular *va'*, *da'*, *dì*, *fa'*, *sta'*.

c. The third person plural of the present indicative can always be constructed from the first person singular, from which can be formed also the whole present subjunctive except the first and second persons plural: these come from the first person plural of the present indicative. Exceptions to this rule are *andàre*, *avére*, *dàre*, *fàre*, *sapére*, and *stàre*, which have in the third person plural of the present indicative *vanno*, *hanno*, *danno*, *fanno*, *sanno*, *stanno*; while *avére*, *dàre*, *sapére*, and *stàre* have in the present subjunctive *abbia*, *dia*, *sappia*, *stia*.

67. With the aid of the above notes any *vero* except *essere* can be constructed from the infinitive, the participles (the present participle often being necessary to show the uncontracted form of the infinitive), the singular of the present indicative, and the first person singular of the preterite and future.

a. In poetry and in some prose works *ggi* is often substituted for *d* in the present of verbs in *-dere*: as *chièggio* = *chiedo*, "I ask"; *vèggia* = *vèda*, "let him see."

b. In old Italian we find *fòro* for *fùrono*, *fòra* for *sarèi* or *sarèbbe*, *fòrano* for *sarèbbero*, *fia* for *sarà*, and *fiano* for *saranno*.

c. Verbs whose stem ends in *l*, *n*, or *r* may drop the final vowel in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and in the imperative singular: as *vien qui*, "come here"; *non par possibile*, "it doesn't seem possible"; *non vuol andàre*, "he won't go."

d. See 63, a, b, c, d.

68. At the end of the book (page 88) will be found a list of irregular verbs. There all irregular parts will be printed in full, except the preterite and (contracted) future, of which the first person singular will be given. The conditional, which is always formed from the same stem as the future, will not be mentioned. The imperative will be given only when it differs from the present indicative.

a. In general, compound verbs will not be included in this list: those differing in conjugation from their simple verbs will be given in the Alphabetical List of Irregular and Defective Verbs (page 100). All compounds of *dàre* and *fàre* are accented on the same syllable as the simple verbs: as *fa*, "he does"; *disfà*, "he undoes."

The compounds of *stàre* demand special mention: *ristàre*, *soprastàre*, *sottostàre* are inflected like *stàre* (*ristà*, *soprastàtti*, *sottostàtano*); *distàre* has no present participle, is regular in the present of all moods (*disto*, etc.), but otherwise is inflected like *stàre* (*distàtti*, etc.); *constàre*, *contrastàre*, *instàre*, *ostàre*, *restàre*, *sostàre* are regular throughout (*cònstà*, *contràstano*, *instài*, *ostàrono*, *rèsti*, *sostàssi*).

#### EXERCISE 15.

Tànto all' andàre quànto al tornàre dàlla scuòla, Enrico dà<sup>1</sup> nòia a tùtti; picchia i bambíni più piccìni di lui, tira i sàssi a quálche pòvero càne che se ne va<sup>2</sup> tranquillaménte pel sùo viàggio, rómpe le piànte del giardíno che dève<sup>3</sup> traversàre per andàre a scuòla o per tornàre a càsa; insómma è un continuo far malànni.

Il bábbò va<sup>3</sup> a lavoráre la mattina prèsto ; la mámma è maláta, e quindi non lo pòssono<sup>4</sup> accompagnáre. L' áltra mattina però gli segui brútta. Méntre andáva a scuòla, vide<sup>5</sup> avánti a sè un bambino piccìno, tútto vestito bène, e che paréva sólo ; Enrico, sénza far tánti discórsi, arríva di diètro, gli píglia il cappèllo e gliélo bútta in úna fònte che èra lì vicína. Il pòvero bambino si mette a piángere, e Enríco cominciò a scappáre. Ma quèsta vòlta avéva fáttö<sup>6</sup> mále i suòi cónti : il bambino non èra sólo, lo accompagnáva un bel can barbóne. I can barbóni hánno tánto intendíménto, che fánno<sup>6</sup> áltre còse ben più meraviglióse che andáre ad accompagnáre a scuòla un bambino. Il barbóne dúnque, còme vide<sup>5</sup> il súo padroncínò assalíto, vía diètro ad Enríco che fuggíva ; in un áttimo lo raggiúne,<sup>7</sup> e agguantátagli úna gámbe, lo badáva a mórdere<sup>8</sup> ; Enríco urláva, ma il cáné non lo lasciò finchè un signóre, che avéva vísto<sup>5</sup> tútta la scèna, non lo minacciò col bastóne. Enríco ebbe stracciáti i calzóni, laceráta la cárne délla gámbe, e fu pòi punito dal maèstro e daí genitóri ; ma da quel giòrno a quèsta pártè non dà<sup>1</sup> più nòia a nessúno, avèndo vedúto che un cáné stéssò gli avéva insegnáto còme fósse mále molestáre gli áltri.

<sup>1</sup> From *dáre*, 92, 3. <sup>2</sup> *Andáre*, *andársene*, 92, 1. <sup>3</sup> *Dovére*, 92, 8. <sup>4</sup> *Potére*, 92, 21. <sup>5</sup> *Vedére*, 92, 10. <sup>6</sup> *Fáre*, 92, 2. <sup>7</sup> *Raggiúngere*, 92, 89.

<sup>8</sup> He kept biting him.

### EXERCISE 16.

Have you ever observed what<sup>1</sup> happens when a pot of water boils at the fire? The steam of the water rises like so-much smoke, and remains attached to the lid that covers the pot ; when this steam has begun to cool, it becomes<sup>2</sup> water once-more,<sup>3</sup> and falls<sup>3</sup> down again<sup>4</sup> drop by drop. In-like-manner<sup>4</sup> it happens with<sup>5</sup> the vapors which the sun and the heat lift from the earth. The vapors rise, collect themselves on<sup>6</sup> high in little bubbles, and thus united they form clouds.<sup>7</sup> When these clouds are very-much<sup>8</sup> charged with<sup>9</sup> moisture, they resolve themselves into water ; and

the water, falling<sup>3</sup> down again<sup>3</sup> in drops where the wind carries it, forms rain.<sup>7</sup> So<sup>10</sup> rain<sup>7</sup> is-only<sup>11</sup> steam turned-back-into<sup>12</sup> water. The cloud, too,<sup>13</sup> is-only<sup>11</sup> a quantity of steam not-very<sup>14</sup> dense and not-very<sup>14</sup> high<sup>15</sup> in the air. This vapor, by<sup>16</sup> remaining low, prevents us sometimes from-seeing<sup>17</sup> objects<sup>7</sup> even at a<sup>18</sup> small distance from us.

<sup>1</sup> *Quello che.* <sup>2</sup> To become once more = *ritornare.* <sup>3</sup> To fall again = *ricadere.* <sup>4</sup> *Medesimamente.* <sup>5</sup> *Per.* <sup>6</sup> *In.* <sup>7</sup> See 13, b. <sup>8</sup> *Molto.* <sup>9</sup> *Di.* <sup>10</sup> *Dunque.* <sup>11</sup> *Non è altro che.* <sup>12</sup> *Tornato.* <sup>13</sup> *Poi.* <sup>14</sup> *Poco.* <sup>15</sup> *Sollevato.* <sup>16</sup> *Omit.* <sup>17</sup> *Di vedere.*

## MOODS AND TENSES.

**69.** The English present participle used as subject or direct object of a verb must be rendered in Italian by the infinitive, nearly always with the article *il*.

Ex.: *Mi piace il viaggiare*, I like travelling.

*La nostra prima cura fu il cercare una pensione*, our first care was hunting up a boarding-house.

*Rifarsiela cogli animali è da sciocchi*, taking vengeance on animals is folly.

**70.** The English present participle preceded by a preposition is translated as follows: (1) If in English the preposition can be omitted without essentially changing the sense (even though the construction be awkward), the phrase is rendered in Italian by the present participle without any preposition.

It is, however, to be noted that "to amuse one's self by . . .," "to weary one's self by . . ." are *divertirsi a . . .*, *affannarsi a . . .* with the infinitive. A few other verbs take this same construction.

(2) If the preposition is a necessary part of the thought, it is expressed in Italian, and the English present participle is rendered by the infinitive with the article *il*. This article is, however, always omitted after the prepositions "after" (*dopo di*), "before" (*prima di*), "instead of" (*invece di*), "without" (*senza*); and also after "of" (*di*) when in English the present participle cannot be replaced by a noun.

Ex.: *Studiando si impara*, (through) studying we learn.

*Dovrte corrispóndere alla sua cortesia ascoltándola*, I ought to acknowledge her courtesy (by) listening to her.

*Parténdo incontró un amico*, (on) going away he met a friend.

*Copiando non fa errori*, (in) copying he makes no mistakes.

*Si diverte a tirar sassi*, he amuses himself (by) throwing stones.

*Óltre il fare scarabocchi scrive male*, besides making blots he writes badly.

*Parló contra il trarre útile di quella disgrázia*, I spoke against utilizing that misfortune.

*Prima di morire*, before dying.

*Invece di dirmi tutto*, instead of telling me everything.

*Parliamo senza riflettere*, we speak without thinking.

*Questa vittoria fu cagione del sostituire un magistrato dei Nove a quello dei Trenta*, this victory was the cause of the substituting (= substitution of) a magistracy of the Nine for that of the Thirty.

*Ho l'abitudine di coricarmi tardi*, I am in the habit of going to bed late.

*Il vizio di fumare*, the habit of smoking.

71. Following are some other rules for the use of the infinitive and participles:—

a. When any verb is used as an auxiliary, the mood and tense are expressed in that verb, and not in the dependent infinitive (see 57).

Ex.: *Avrte potuto farlo*, I could have done it.

*b.* After *fàre*, "to make" or "to have" (= "to cause"), *sentire* and *uñre*, "to hear," and *vedere*, "to see," the Italian present infinitive is used to render an English past participle. After *lasciare*, "to let," and often after the preposition *da* an Italian active infinitive is used to translate a passive one in English.

Ex.: *Si fa capire*, he makes himself understood.

*Farò fare un paio di scarpe*, I shall have a pair of shoes made.

*L'ho sentito dire*, I have heard it said.

*Lo vide ammazzare*, he saw him killed.

*Si lascia ingannare*, he lets himself be deceived.

*Non c'è niente da fare*, there is nothing to be done.

*c.* The Italian past participle is inflected like any other adjective. The present participle is invariable. When in English the present participle is used adjectively, without any verbal force whatsoever, it is translated, not by the participle, but by a verbal adjective, which can be formed from almost any Italian verb by changing the infinitive ending into *-ante* for the first conjugation, and into *-ente* for the others. This adjective may be used substantively.

Ex.: *Questi vasi sono rotti*, these vases are broken.

*La donna sta cucendo*, the woman is sewing.

*Un animale parlante*, a speaking animal.

*Due amanti*, two lovers.

*d.* A whole protasis is often expressed in Italian by a present participle, or by an infinitive with *a*.

Ex.: *Andandovi lo vedrebbe*, if he went there, he would see it.

*A bucarsi esce il sangue*, if you prick yourself, blood comes.

*e.* A clause in indirect discourse is sometimes replaced by the infinitive followed by the subject.

Ex.: *Disse essere questo l'uomo che cercavamo*, he said this was the man we were looking for.



**72.** In negative commands the infinitive is always used instead of the second person singular of the imperative.

Ex.: *Tròvalo*, find it; *non lo trovare*, do not find it.

**73.** When an action is represented as having taken place and still continuing, the English uses the perfect or pluperfect tense, the Italian the present or imperfect.

Ex.: *Stúdio l'italiáno da otto mési*, I have studied Italian for eight months.

**74.** In subordinate clauses referring to the future and introduced by a conjunction of time, where the present is often used in English, the future tense must be employed in Italian.

Ex.: *Quando vi andrò, glidlo dirò*, when I go there, I'll tell him.

a. The future is often used, without any idea of future time, to express probability.

Ex.: *Sarà uscito*, he has probably gone out.

*Avrà molto denaro*, he probably has a great deal of money.

**75.** The difference between the imperfect and the preterite is this: the preterite is used of an event that occurred at a definite date in the past, the imperfect is used in a description or in speaking of an accessory circumstance or an habitual action in past time—the preterite is a narrative, the imperfect a descriptive tense. The preterite perfect is used (instead of the pluperfect) only after conjunctions meaning “as soon as” (*appena che, subito che, tosto che*), and sometimes after *dopo che*, “after.”\*

---

\* It is used also in phrases like: *in cinque minuti ebbe finita la lettera*, “in five minutes he had the letter finished.”

**Ex. :** *Entrò mentre dormivamo*, he came in while we slept.  
*Faccio così ogni mattina*, I did so every morning.  
*Lo fece l'anno scorso*, he did it last year.  
*Tosto che l'ebbe visto, uscì*, as soon as he had seen it, he went.

**a.** In conversation the perfect is often used instead of the preterite, when the event is not remote.

**Ex. :** *Vi sono andato ieri*, I went there yesterday.

**76.** The conditional, like the English "should" and "would," has two uses: in indirect discourse after a principal verb in a past tense it expresses the tense which in direct discourse would be future; in the conclusion of a conditional sentence it is used when the protasis is (or, if expressed, would be) in the imperfect subjunctive (see 77).

**Ex. :** *Disse che lo farebbe*, he said he would do it.  
*Se fosse vero lo crederei*, if it were true, I should believe it.  
*Questa casa mi converrebbe*, this house would suit me.

**77.** When a condition is contrary to fact, or consists of a more or less unlikely supposition referring to future time,\* the protasis is in the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive, the apodosis in the conditional;† otherwise both protasis and apodosis are in the indicative.

**Ex. :** *Se l'avessi te lo darei*, if I had it, I should give it thee.  
*Se fosse tornato l'avrei veduto*, if he had returned, I should have seen him.  
*Se venisse noi ce ne andremmo*, if he came, we should go.  
*Se vi andassi morirei*, if I should go there, I should die.

\* Rendered in English by the imperfect, or by the auxiliary "should."

† To avoid compound tenses, the imperfect indicative is sometimes used to replace the pluperfect subjunctive of the protasis and the perfect conditional of the apodosis: *as se parlava, egli si buttava per la finestra*, "if she had spoken, he would have thrown himself from the window."

*Se non è véro è ben trovato*, if it isn't true, it's a good invention.  
*Se lo fece sarà punito*, if he did it, he will be punished.

a. The missing persons of the imperative are supplied from the present subjunctive. The imperfect subjunctive is used to express a wish that is not likely to be realized.

Ex. : *La si regoli*, moderate yourself; *si accomodi*, be seated.  
*Stiano zitti*, be quiet (pl.); *andiamo*, let us go.  
*Sia pure*, be it so; *vengano subito*, let them come at once.  
*Fosse pure*, would it were so.

b. When a relative clause restricts its antecedent to one of all its possible conditions or actions, the verb of that relative clause is in the subjunctive, — the present subjunctive if the verb on which it depends be present or future, the imperfect if it be past or conditional.

Ex. : *Non c'è animale più bellino d'un gatto giovane che faccia il chiasso*, there is no animal prettier than a kitten that is at play.  
*Dove troverete un giovine che sposi voi*, where will you find a young man who will marry you?  
*Vorrèi vedere un bel quadro che non fosse antico*, I should like to see a fine picture that is not old.

c. The verb of a subordinate clause depending on an impersonal verb, on a superlative, or on one of the words "first," "last," and "only" is in the subjunctive.

Ex. : *Bisognò ch'io vi andassi*, I had to go there.  
*È giusto che siano puniti*, it is right that they should be punished.  
*E il più piccolo animale che esista*, it's the smallest animal that exists.

d. The subjunctive is used after all conjunctions meaning "although," "as if," "unless," "provided that," "in order that," "in such a way that" (denoting purpose), "before," "however," "whenever," "wherever." When *finchè* means "until" it takes the subjunctive.

**Ex. :** *Benchè stia nascosto, lo troverò, dovunque sia*, although he be hidden, I shall find him, wherever he is.

*Partirò a meno che egli non venga*, I shall go unless he comes.

*Lo fece perchè io venissi*, he did it that I might come.

*La divise in modo che le due parti fossero uguali*, he divided it in such a way that the two parts should be equal.

*Per quanto ricco egli sia*, however rich he may be.

*Aspetta finchè io torni*, wait until I return.

*e.* The subjunctive is used after the indefinite pronouns *qualche* *che*, *qualunque*, *chiunque*, *checcchè*, *per quanto*.

**Ex. :** *Chiunque venga*, whoever comes.

*Qualunque disgrazia che succeda*, whatever misfortune happens.

*Per quante volte ci vada*, however many times I go there.

*f.* The verb of an indirect question is nearly always in the subjunctive when it depends on a main verb either in a past tense or in the conditional.

**Ex. :** *Domandano se il re è morto*, they ask whether the king is dead.

*Domandò se il padre fosse uscito*, he asked whether his father was out.

*g.* In a clause dependent on a verb of saying the subjunctive is used if the main verb is negative, or interrogative, or in the conditional, or in a past tense. It is generally not used, however, after an affirmative verb in a past tense when the author himself wishes to imply that the indirect statement is true.

**Ex. :** *Dice che la cosa è chiarissima*, he says the thing is perfectly clear.

*Non dico che questo sia vero*, I don't say this is true.

*Dissero che lo zio fosse ammalato*, they said their uncle was ill.

*Gli dissi che mi chiamava Enrico*, I told him my name was Henry.

**h.** The subjunctive is used after verbs expressing causation, concession, desire, emotion, prevention, and uncertainty : *i.e.*, after verbs of bringing about ; granting, permitting ; commanding, hoping, requesting, wishing ; fearing, regretting, rejoicing ; forbidding, hindering ; being ignorant, denying, disbelieving, doubting, expecting, pretending, supposing, suspecting, thinking,

**Ex. :** *Non so chi stano*, I don't know who they are.

*Vorrei che questo non fosse accaduto*, I wish this had not happened.

*Supponiamo che sia provato*, let us suppose that it is proved.

*Spéro mi scriva presto*, I hope you will write to me soon.

**i.** *So*, "if," is occasionally omitted before an imperfect subjunctive ; in this case the subject, if expressed, must follow the verb.

**Ex. :** *Sarèi felice venisse egli*, I should be happy, should he come.

#### EXERCISE 17.

La mamma di Alfrédo avéva lasciáto un anêllo d' ôro sul cassettóne. Alfrédo vólle<sup>1</sup> métterselo in dító. Che giudizio ! pr-têndere che l' anêllo délla mámma pôssa<sup>2</sup> stáre in un dítino d' un fanciúlllo ! Se lo mise<sup>3</sup> nel dító grôssó e pôi s' affacciò álla finêstra ; l' anêllo cascò di sótto, e non se ne sêppe<sup>4</sup> piú núlla. La mámma cêrca l' anêllo, ma non c' êra piú ; cêrca di qui, di là, di sópra, cêrca per tútto, nè l' anêllo si può<sup>5</sup> trováre. Allóra chiáma Alfrédo e gli dice<sup>6</sup> : — Bambíno, dímmi<sup>6</sup> la verità ; hái présó<sup>7</sup> tu il mio anêllo ? l' hái pêrso<sup>8</sup> tu ? — Alfrédo, cattivo, disse<sup>5</sup> di no. La mámma si ricordáva bêne d' avérlo lasciáto nel vassóino sul cassettóne. Non credéva Alfrédo capáce di dir le bugie, quindi sospettò che qualcúno l' avésse rubáto. Ci andáva in cása<sup>9</sup> úna bambína, figliuôla d' un antico súdo servitóre, e il sospétto cádde<sup>10</sup> sópra quêsta pòvera creatúra. La mámma di Alfrédo non la vólle<sup>1</sup> piú in cása ; ma l' allontanò con bêlla maniêra, e nessúno si avvide<sup>11</sup> di núlla, perchê quêlla signóra êra buôna. Però la

'bugia di Alfrédo féce<sup>12</sup> sì che súa mádre credésse ládra quèlla pòvera bambína. Dío perdóni Alfrédo, Dío gl' ispiri di rimediàre a sì brútta azióne; váda,<sup>13</sup> si bútti ái pièdi délla mámma, le rac-  
cònti tútto, e non commétta mái più di quèste azionácce.

- <sup>1</sup> From *volére*, 92, 19. <sup>2</sup> *Polére*, 92, 21. <sup>3</sup> *Méttere*, 92, 104. <sup>4</sup> *Sapére*, 92, 6. <sup>5</sup> *Dire*, 92, 152. <sup>6</sup> *Dire*: see 48, d. <sup>7</sup> *Préndere*, 92, 47. <sup>8</sup> *Pèrdere*, 92, 46. <sup>9</sup> There used to come to the house. <sup>10</sup> *Cadére*, 92, 7. <sup>11</sup> *Avvedérsi*, 92, 10. <sup>12</sup> *Fàre*, 92, 2. <sup>13</sup> *Andàre*, 92, 1.

## EXERCISE 18.

We inhabit the earth; but not all the earth has the same name everywhere: the earth is-divided<sup>1</sup> into five parts, and every part has its name. The five parts of the earth are-called<sup>1</sup>: Europe, Asia, Africa, America, Oceanica. Imagine you-cut-open<sup>2</sup> the earth in the middle and place<sup>3</sup> it on a table, in-such-a-way<sup>4</sup> that the inside shall-rest<sup>5</sup> on the table, and the outside shall-present<sup>5</sup> itself to your eyes. You will have two circles: in the circle that lies<sup>6</sup> at your right are<sup>7</sup> Europe, Asia, Africa, and a part of Oceanica; in the circle that lies<sup>6</sup> on-the<sup>8</sup> left are<sup>7</sup> America and the other part of Oceanica. But the ancients did<sup>9</sup> not<sup>10</sup> believe that the earth was round, nor did<sup>9</sup> they know that its parts were five. They thought that the earth was flat and surrounded by the sea; they knew, moreover,<sup>11</sup> only<sup>12</sup> three parts: Europe, Asia, Africa. They never<sup>13</sup> would have dreamed that the earth was round, and that on<sup>14</sup> the side opposite to the-one<sup>15</sup> which they inhabited there<sup>16</sup> was inhabited land. America was discovered 395 years ago by an Italian who was-called<sup>1</sup> Christopher Columbus. Christopher Columbus was-born<sup>17</sup> in a village near Genoa in 1447. His parents were poor; his father earned hardly enough-to<sup>14</sup> support the family. However, by-dint<sup>18</sup> of sacrifices they had<sup>19</sup> him study; and as<sup>20</sup> Christopher studied willingly, he grew up a fine<sup>21</sup> boy. When it was time<sup>22</sup> to-choose<sup>23</sup> a profession, he chose to-be-a<sup>24</sup> sailor. In<sup>8</sup> those times they believed that the world ended

after Africa ; but Columbus, on-the-contrary,<sup>25</sup> persuaded himself that the world ought<sup>26</sup> not<sup>10</sup> to<sup>26</sup> end there, and that by continuing to sail, one<sup>1</sup> ought<sup>26</sup> to<sup>26</sup> turn and come-back to the same point.

- <sup>1</sup> See 54, g. <sup>2</sup> *Di aprire.* <sup>3</sup> *Di posdre.* <sup>4</sup> *In módo.* <sup>5</sup> See 77, d. <sup>6</sup> Use *restdre.* <sup>7</sup> *C' è.* <sup>8</sup> *A.* <sup>9</sup> See 54, c. <sup>10</sup> *Non*, "not," must precede the verb. <sup>11</sup> *Pò.* <sup>12</sup> See 82. <sup>13</sup> See 83. <sup>14</sup> *Da.* <sup>15</sup> *Quella.* <sup>16</sup> *Vi.* <sup>17</sup> To be born = *nascere*, 92, 128. <sup>18</sup> *A fôrza.* <sup>19</sup> Use *fâre*, 92, 2. <sup>20</sup> *Perchè.* <sup>21</sup> *Bravo.* <sup>22</sup> Use def. article. <sup>23</sup> *Di scégliere.* <sup>24</sup> *Di fâre il.* <sup>25</sup> *Invéce.* <sup>26</sup> See 57.

## CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS, AND AD- VERBS.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

#### 78. The principal conjunctions are :—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| After, <i>dopo che.</i>                        | However (= nevertheless), <i>però, pure.</i>                      |
| Also, <i>anche.</i>                            | However (before an adj.), <i>qualunque,</i><br><i>per quânto.</i> |
| Although, <i>benchè, sebbene.</i>              | If, <i>se.</i>  |
| And, <i>e.</i>                                 | In order that, <i>perchè, acciòchè, affinché.</i>                 |
| As, <i>cóme, quânto</i> (after <i>tanto</i> ). | Much less, <i>non che.</i>  |
| As (= since), <i>siccome, poichè.</i>          | Neither . . . nor, <i>nè . . . nè.</i>                            |
| As if, <i>cóme se, quasi.</i>                  | Nevertheless, <i>tuttavia, nondiméno, però.</i>                   |
| As long as, <i>finchè.</i>                     | Nor, <i>nè, nemmeno, neppure.</i>                                 |
| As well as, <i>cóme anco.</i>                  | Nor . . . either, <i>nemmeno . . . neppure.</i>                   |
| Because, <i>perchè.</i>                        | Nor even, <i>neanche, neppure.</i>                                |
| Before, <i>prima che.</i>                      | Not to say . . . but even, <i>non che . . . ma.</i>               |
| Both . . . and, <i>e . . . e.</i>              | Or, <i>o, ovréro, ossia.</i>                                      |
| But, <i>ma.</i>                                | Or else, <i>ossia.</i>  |
| Either . . . or, <i>o . . . o.</i>             | Provided that, <i>purchè.</i>                                     |
| Except that, <i>se non che.</i>                | Rather, <i>anzi.</i>  |
| For, <i>chè.</i>                               | Since (temporal), <i>dacchè.</i>                                  |
| Granting that, <i>dato che.</i>                |   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Since (causal), <i>poichè, siccome.</i>  | Too, <i>pure, anche.</i>                        |
| So, <i>dunque, adunque.</i>  | Unless, <i>a meno che non, eccetto che non.</i> |
| So that (result), <i>di modo che, sicchè.</i>                                      | Until, <i>finchè non.</i>                       |
| So that (= in order that), <i>perchè.</i>  | When, <i>quando.</i>                            |
| Than, <i>che.</i>  | Whence, <i>dónde.</i>                           |
| That, <i>che.</i>  | Where, <i>dove, ove, là dove.</i>               |
| That (= in order that), <i>perchè.</i>   | Wherever, <i>dovunque.</i>                      |
| Then, <i>dunque.</i>   | Whether, <i>se.</i>                             |
| Therefore, <i>dunque, però, perciò, adunque</i><br>(at the beginning of a clause). | While, <i>mentre, mentre che.</i>               |

The final vowel of *anche, che, dove, neppure*, and *ove* is generally elided before *e* or *i*.

*a.* Of the above conjunctions *acciochè, affinché, a meno che non, benchè, come se, dato che, dovunque, eccetto che non, perchè* meaning "in order that," *per quanto, prima che, purchè, qualunque, quasi*, and *sebbene* are followed by the subjunctive. For the use of *che*, "that," with the subjunctive, see 77, *c, g, h*. *Come* is occasionally used for *come se*, and then it takes the subjunctive. *Finchè* when referring to the future sometimes has the sense of *finchè non*, and then it takes the subjunctive. *Se* is followed by the subjunctive when it introduces an indirect question dependent on a verb in a past tense, or a condition contrary to fact. For examples, see 77, *c, d, f, g, h*.

*b.* *Che* cannot be omitted in Italian as "that" is in English: \* as *disse che fosse vero*, "he said it was true." *Se* can be omitted in a condition contrary to fact: as *fossi ricco sarei felice*, "were I rich, I should be happy."

---

\* It is omitted, however, in the following peculiarly Italian construction: *il ragazzo parèva fosse felice*, "the boy seemed to be happy"; that is, between a verb of seeming and the subjunctive dependent on it, when in English the construction would be a verb of seeming with a dependent infinitive. It is occasionally omitted also after verbs of wishing, hoping, and fearing: as *spéro mi scriva presto*, "I hope you will write to me soon."



c. *E* and *o* are often written *ed* and *od* before a vowel.

Ex.: *Mio pàdre ed io*, my father and I.

d. Between a verb of motion and an infinitive "and" is rendered by the preposition *a*.

Ex.: *Andrò a cercàrlo*, I'll go and look for it.

e. When *anche*, "also" or "too," relates to a personal pronoun, the disjunctive form of that pronoun must follow *anche*, even if some form of the same pronoun has already been expressed.

Ex.: *Andrémo anche noi*, we shall go too.

*Parte anch' egli*, he goes away too.

*Trovi anche lui*, I found him too.

*Vennero anch' essi*, they came too.

*Lo or me lo diedde anche a me*, he gave it to me too.

*Ti piace anche a te*, you like it too.

## PREPOSITIONS.

79. The principal prepositions are:—

About (= approximately), *circa*.

About (= around), *intórno a*, *attórno a*.

Above, *sopra*.

According to, *secondo*.

After, *dopo*, *dopo di*.

Against, *contra*, *contro*.

Along, *lungo*.

Among, *fra*, *tra*.

Around, *intórno a*, *attórno a*.

As far as, *fino a*, *sino a*.

As for, *per*, *quánte a*, *in quánte a*.

As to, *rispetto a*.

At, *a*.

Because of, *per motivo di*.

Before (time), *prima di*, *innanzi*.

Before (place), *davánti a*, *innanzi*.

Behind, *dietro*.

Below, *sotto*.

Beside (place), *accanto a*.

Besides, beside (= in addition to), *oltre*.

Between, *fra*, *tra*.

Beyond, *oltre*, *al di là di*.

By, *da*, *accanto a* (= beside).

By means of, *per mezzo di*.

During, *duránte*.

Except, *tranne*, *eccetto*, *fubri di*.

For, *per*.

From, *da*, *fin da*.

In, *in*.

In front of, *davánti a*, *innanzi*.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Inside of, <i>déntro di</i> .                                 | Round and round, <i>tórno tórno a</i> .                      |
| Instead of, <i>invéce di</i> .                                | Since, <i>da</i> .   |
| In the midst of, <i>in mézza a</i> .                          | To, <i>a</i> .   |
| Into, <i>in</i> .   | Toward, <i>vérso</i> .                                       |
| Near, <i>vicíno a</i> ,                                       | Through, <i>per</i> .  |
| Of, <i>di</i> .   | Under, <i>sótto</i> .  |
| On, <i>su</i> (before a vowel, <i>sur</i> ), <i>sópra</i> .   | Upon, <i>su</i> (before vowels, <i>sur</i> ), <i>sópra</i> . |
| On this side of, <i>al di qua di</i> .                        | Up to, <i>fino a</i> , <i>sino a</i> .                       |
| On to, <i>su</i> (before vowels, <i>sur</i> ), <i>sópra</i> . | With, <i>con</i> .   |
| Opposite, <i>dirimpétto a</i> .                               | Within, <i>fra</i> , <i>tra</i> .                            |
| Out of, <i>da</i> , <i>di</i> , <i>fuòri di</i> .             | Within (= inside of), <i>déntro di</i> .                     |
| Outside of, <i>fuòri di</i> .                                 | Without, <i>sénza</i> .                                      |
| Over, <i>sópra</i> .  | Without (= outside of), <i>fuòri di</i> .                    |

When governing a personal pronoun *contra*, *dietro*, *dopo*, *sénza*, *sópra*, *sótto*, and often *fra* and *vérso* take *di* after them: as *sénza di me*, "without me"; *fra di loro*, "among themselves." After *con*, *in*, *per*, a word beginning with *s* impure generally prefixes *i*\*: as *la stráda*, "the street"; *in istráda*, "in the street."

a. "To" before the name of a country, after a verb of motion, is *in*.

Ex.: *Andiámo in Fráncia*, let us go to France.

b. "To" before an infinitive is rendered in Italian as follows: (1) After the verbs *bastáre*, "suffice"; *bisognáre*, "need"; *convéntre*, "suit"; *desideráre*, "desire"; *dovére*, "must," "ought"; *fáre*, "make"; *lasciáre*, "let"; *parére*, "seem"; *potére*, "can," "be able"; *sapére*, "know"; *sentíre*, "hear," "feel"; *solére*, "be accustomed"; *uóíre*, "hear"; *vedére*, "see"; and *vólére*, "wish," "to" before a following infinitive is omitted. It is omitted also in exclamations and indirect questions consisting only of an interrogative and an infinitive.

---

\* Cf. 58, a.

Ex.: *Dovrèi capire*, I ought to understand.

*Bisogna pensarci*, it is necessary to look out for it.

*Potrèmo venire*, we shall be able to come.

*Vorrèi sapere*, I should like to know.

*Non sa che fare nè dove avvolgersi*, he doesn't know what to do nor where to turn.

(2) After verbs of accustoming, attaining, beginning, compelling, continuing, helping, learning, teaching, and after verbs of motion, "to" before a following infinitive is *a*.

Ex.: *Andranno a vederla*, they will go to see her.

*Cominciò a piangere*, he began to cry.

(3) After all other verbs it is *di*; but "to" meaning "in order to" is *per*, and "to" indicating duty or necessity is *da*.

Ex.: *Gli dissi di scrivere*, I told him to write.

*Mi è grato di dirlo*, I am happy to say so.

*Legge per divertirsi*, he reads to amuse himself.

*Ho qualcosa da fare*, I have something to do.

c. "By" denoting the agent is *da*.

Ex.: *Fu fatto da lui*, it was done by him.

d. "In" is *in*; but when expressing future time it is *fra*.

Ex.: *Fra tre giorni sarà finito*, in three days it will be finished.

e. "For" is *per*: as *l'ha fatto per me*, "he has done it for me." But in the sense of "since," in speaking of past time, "for" is *da*. "For," meaning "during," is omitted or translated *durante*. Sentences like "it is right for him to do it" must be translated by *che* with the subjunctive: *è giusto che lo faccia*.

Ex.: *Dimora da molti anni a Firenze*, he has lived for many years at Florence (see 73).

*Resterò cinque settimane*, I shall stay for five weeks.

*Continuano durante tre secoli*, they continued for three centuries.

*Piovve durante un mese*, it rained for a month.

*Bisogna ch'io vada*, it is necessary for me to go.

*f.* "From" is *da*; but before adverbs and sometimes after verbs of departing it is *di*. In speaking of time it is generally *fin da*.

Ex.: *È lontano di qua*, it is far from here.

*Esco di casa*, I go out of the house.

*Fin dal principio*, from the beginning.

*g.* *Da* has, in addition to the meanings "by," "from," "since," another sense hard to render in English: it may be translated "as," "characteristic of," "destined for," "such as to," or "suited to," according to the context. *Da* means also "at the house of" or "to the house of." *Da* corresponds to English "on" or "at" before the word "side," *parte*, used in its literal sense.

Ex.: *Prometto da uomo d'onore*, I promise as a man of honor.

*Il Salvini da Otello*, Salvini as Othello.

*Sarèste tanto buono da venire*, would you be so good as to come?

*Questo è da sciocchi*, this is acting like a fool.

*Il bambino ha un giudizio da grande*, the child has the judgment of a grown person.

*La sala da pranzo*, the dining-room.

*Una tazza da caffè*, a coffee-cup.

*L'ho veduto dal Signor Neri*, I saw him at Mr. Neri's.

*Viene da me*, he comes to my house.

*Da questa parte*, on this side.

*h.* *A* is often used before a noun — not indicating material (which is expressed by *di*) nor purpose (expressed by *da*) — that describes another noun, when in English these two substantives would form a compound word.

Ex.: *Una macchina a vapore*, a steam-engine.

*Una sedia a dondolo*, a rocking-chair.

*Uno sgabello a tre piedi*, a three-legged stool.

*i.* *Essere per* or *stare per* means "to be about to."

Ex.: *Stava per parlare*, he was on the point of speaking.

*f.* In some idiomatic phrases *di* is used in Italian when another preposition would be employed in English.

Ex.: *Di giorno, di notte*, by day, by night.

*Essere contento di una cosa*, to be satisfied with a thing.

*Vivo di pane*, I live on bread.

*Che faceva delle forbici*, what did he do with the scissors?

### ADVERBS.

80. (1) Adverbs, unless they begin the clause, are generally placed immediately after the verb; when a compound tense is used, the adverb usually follows the past participle. *Non*, however, always precedes the verb.

Ex.: *Lo dice sempre*, he always says so.

*Egli l'ha fatto spesso*, he has often done it.

*Non mi piace*, I don't like it.

*Non ci vado mai*, I never go there.

(2) Adverbs are compared like adjectives (see 31); but "better," "worse," "more," "less" are respectively *miglio*, *peggio*, *più*, *meno*.

81. "Yes" is *sì* or *già*: *sì* when it expresses real affirmation, *già* when it denotes passive assent. "No" is *no*. "Not" is *non*, after which a word beginning with *s* impure generally prefixes *i*. "Or not" at the end of a clause is *o no*.

Ex.: *Le piace questo tempo?* — *Sì*. — "Do you like this weather?"  
"Yes."

*Che tempaccio!* — *Già*. — "What nasty weather!" "Yes."

*Sta bene*, he is well; *non istà bene*, he isn't well.

*Sia vero o no*, whether it be true or not.

a. "What?" meaning "what do you say?" is *cóme?* *Che* and the interjection *o* are often used to introduce questions.

Ex.: *O perchè non rispondete? — Còme? — Che siete sordo, signóre?*  
— "Why don't you answer?" "What?" "Are you deaf, sir?"

b. "Very" is *mólto* (see, however, 35, a). Instead of using a word or suffix for "very," the Italians often repeat the emphasized adjective or adverb.

Ex.: *È mólto bello* or *è bellissimo*, it is very beautiful.  
*I suoi genitori erano pòveri pòveri*, his parents were very poor.

82. "Only" may be translated *soltángo* or *solaménte*; but it is oftener rendered by *non . . . che*, with the whole verb intervening, and with the word modified by "only" immediately after *che*.

Ex.: *Non ne ho compráto che due*, I have bought only two of them.

83. "Never" is *non . . . mái*, with the inflected part of the verb intervening. "Just," as an adverb of time, is *or óra*. "Early" is *présto*, *per témpo*, or *di buon' óra*. "This morning" is *stamáne*; "last night" is *stanótte*. "The day after to-morrow" and "the day before yesterday" are respectively *domán l' áltro* and *ier l' áltro*. "A week, a fortnight from to-day" are *oggi a ótto*, *a quíndici*. "Ago" is translated by *fa*, which follows the substantive of time; if this substantive is plural, "ago" may be rendered also by *sóno* (*erano* or *sardánno* if the date from which time is counted be past or future).

Ex.: *Non ti ha mái vedúto*, he has never seen thee.

*Son arrivúti or óra*, they have just arrived.

*Tre ánni fa*, three years ago; *quáttro giorní sóno*, four days ago.

*Lunedì erano due settimane*, two weeks ago Monday.

*Domani saranno cinque mesi*, five months ago to-morrow.

**84.** "Here" and "there" when they denote a place already mentioned, and no particular stress is laid upon them, are *ci* and *vi*, which occupy the same positions with respect to the verb as the pronouns *ci* and *vi* (see **48**; **49**, *a*); "there is," "there are," etc., are *c'è* or *vi è*, *ci sono* or *vi sono*, etc. *Ci* and *vi* are often used in Italian when they would be superfluous in English.

When emphasized, "here" is *qui* or *qua*, "there" indicating a place near the person addressed is *costì* or *costà*, and "there" denoting a point remote from both speaker and hearer is *lì* or *là*.

Ex.: *Carlo vi è tornato*, Charles has gone back there.

*Alla scuola non ci vado*, I don't go to school.

*Voi rimarrete costà, egli resterà laggiù, ed io non partirò di qui*, you will remain where you are, he will stay down there, and I shall not move from here.

*a.* "Here I am," "here it is," etc., are *ecco*, *eccolo*, *eccola*, etc.

**85.** Most adverbs of manner are formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine singular of the corresponding adjective. Adjectives in *-le* and *-re* drop their final *e* in forming the adverb.

Ex.: *Francò*, frank; *francamente*, frankly.

*Felice*, happy; *felicemente*, happily.

*Piacevole*, pleasant; *piacevolmente*, pleasantly.

*Piacevolissimo*, very pleasant; *piacevolissimamente*, very pleasantly.

*a.* "So" meaning "it" is translated *lo*: as *lo faccio*, "I do so"; *lo crede*, "he thinks so"; *lo dicono*, "they say so."

## EXERCISE 19.

Agostino è un goloso di prima ríga. Côme<sup>1</sup> vedéva déi confètti, úna chicca, délle frúttà, súbito se le pigliáva e mangiáva sénza perméssò, ánche se non érano sùe. Infino i suòi compágni di scuòla lo rimproverávano di quèsto viziáccio. La maèstra pensò di puníre Agostino. Un giòrno, quándo fu l' óra délla ricreazióne, tirò fuòri dállà súa cassétta de' confètti, e metténdoli nel panière d' Agostino, gli disse<sup>2</sup>: — Quèsti li porterái a càsa álla túa sorellína. — Agostino a vedér que' confètti féce cèrti occhióni gróssi còme quèlli d' un bòve. Non istáva piú in sè<sup>3</sup> dállà vòglia di mangiàre que' confètti. Èra tánto goloso, che se avéva qual-còsa di sùo non dáva nùlla a nessúno; éra tánto goloso, che avéva la sfacciatággine di mangiàre le còse dégli áltri; o figurátevi dúnque còme si struggéva di<sup>4</sup> mangiár que' confètti ch' érano nel sùo panierino. Finíta la refezióne, i bambíni vánno<sup>5</sup> nel giardíno. Appéna Agostino véde che nélia stánza dov' érano i panierini non c' éra nessúno, sparisce dal giardíno, e vía a pigliàre i confètti. Ma non ha finíto di buttár giò il primo, che<sup>1</sup> sènte un amáro, un sapóre cosí cattívo da non poté règgere; spúta e rispúta, ma l' amáro non se ne andáva.<sup>5</sup> Èra curióso vedér Agostino disperáto per quel saporáccio. E i compágni chi da un úscio, chi da un áltro, e chi dállà finèstra che dáva sul giardíno, stávano a vedérlo, e a ridere di quèsta cèlia che la maèstra avéva fáto<sup>6</sup> a quel goloso. Allóra la maèstra gli disse<sup>2</sup>: — Védi, Agostino; ho fáto<sup>6</sup> fáre quèsti confètti pièni d' assènzio appòsta per te; védi a che còsa pòrta l' ingordigia! Un áltro bambíno non ci sarèbbe rimásto a<sup>7</sup> quèsta cèlia. — Agostino si accòrse<sup>8</sup> che la signóra maèstra gli avéva fáta<sup>6</sup> quèsta cèlia per sùo bène, e che se non si correggéva diventáva lo zimbèllo di tútti.

<sup>1</sup> When.   <sup>2</sup> Dire.   <sup>3</sup> He was beside himself.   <sup>4</sup> He was dying to.   <sup>5</sup> André, andársene.   <sup>6</sup> Fàre.   <sup>7</sup> Wouldn't have been taken in by.   <sup>8</sup> Accòrgersi.



## EXERCISE 20.

It is related that in by-gone<sup>1</sup> times a parrot escaped from a villa. This parrot had learned to say all-the-time<sup>2</sup>: "Who's-there<sup>3</sup>? who's-there<sup>3</sup>?" Having-fled<sup>4</sup> into a wood, it was flying from one tree to another without knowing where to go. A peasant, who by chance was hunting<sup>5</sup> in that place, eyed the parrot, and having never seen any birds before<sup>6</sup> of this sort, he was<sup>7</sup> amazed-at-it,<sup>8</sup> and took<sup>9</sup> all-possible<sup>10</sup> care to aim straight with his gun, so-as-to shoot-it<sup>11</sup> and carry it to show off as a rare thing. But while the peasant was aiming, the parrot, seeing<sup>4</sup> him, repeated his usual question: "Who's-there<sup>3</sup>? who's-there<sup>3</sup>?" The-peasant's-blood-froze-in-his-veins<sup>12</sup> at those words; and lowering<sup>4</sup> his gun, and taking-his-hat-from-his-head<sup>13</sup> he hastened to reply to him, dreadfully<sup>14</sup> mortified: "Excuse-me,<sup>15</sup> for-mercy's-sake,<sup>16</sup> I took<sup>17</sup> you for a bird!"

- <sup>1</sup> *Andditi*. <sup>2</sup> Always. <sup>3</sup> *Chi c'è*. <sup>4</sup> Past participle. <sup>5</sup> *A caccia*. <sup>6</sup> *Per l'innanzi*. <sup>7</sup> *Rimase*: see 54, f. <sup>8</sup> *Ne*. <sup>9</sup> Gave himself. <sup>10</sup> *Ogni*. <sup>11</sup> *Tirargli*. <sup>12</sup> To the peasant not remained blood in-him (*addosso*). <sup>13</sup> *Levdasi di capo il cappello*. <sup>14</sup> *Tutto*. <sup>15</sup> *La scusi*, <sup>16</sup> For charity. <sup>17</sup> Had taken.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**86.** "One," "people," "we," "you," "they," used in an indefinite sense, are rendered in Italian by the reflexive construction with *si* (see 54, g).

**Ex.:** *Si canta bene in Italia*, they sing well in Italy.

*Si fa così*, you do this way.

*Si fanno spesso queste cose*, one often does these things.

**87.** "**All**" as a substantive is *tutto* (*tutti*, etc.): as *tacevano tutti*, "all were silent." The adjective "all," "the whole" is *tutto* followed by the definite article: as *tutta la terra*, "the whole earth"; *tutto il giorno*, "all day"; *tutte le române son belle*, "all Roman ladies are beautiful."

**88.** "**Any**," when it really adds nothing to the sense, is omitted: as *non ha libri*, "he hasn't (any) books"; *volète vino*, "do you want (any) wine?" When, however, this redundant "any" might be replaced by "any of the," it is translated by the partitive genitive (see 12, a): as *volète del vino*, "do you want any (of the) wine?"

"Any" used substantively in the sense of "any of it," "any of them" is *ne* (see 47, 3): as *non ne ho*, "I haven't any"; *non ne ha più*, "he hasn't any more"; *ne avete*, "have you any?"

"Any" meaning "any whatsoever" is *qualunque*: as *lo fa meglio di qualunque altra persona*, "he does it better than any other person."

**89.** "**Some**," when it adds nothing to the sense, is omitted or rendered by the partitive genitive: as *volète burro* or *volète del burro*, "will you have some butter?"

"Some" meaning "some of it," "some of them" is *ne*: as *ne ha*, "he has some."

Otherwise "some" is *alcuno* or *qualche*. *Qualche* is always singular (even when the meaning is plural), and is never used substantively. Ex.: *alcune persone* or *qualche persona*, "some persons"; *alcuni lo dicono*, "some say so."

**90.** "Some . . . others," "the one . . . the other," "one . . . another" are translated by *chi . . . chi*, *altri . . . altri*, *l' uno . . . l' altro*, or *alcuni . . . alcuni*.

*Alcuni* used in this way is always plural. A verb whose subject is *chi* or *altri* (used in this sense) is always singular; *altri* is not used after prepositions. But *l' uno* and *l' altro* can be used in any case or number.

Ex.: *Tutti, chi più tosto, e chi meno, morivano*, all died, some sooner, some later.

*Altri caddero, altri fuggirono*, some fall, others flee.

*Gli uni son buoni, gli altri cattivi*, some are good, others bad.

91. Following is a list of some other indefinite pronouns and adjectives:—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Anybody, <i>qualcuno, qualcheduno, chiunque</i> , pronouns.                 | Neither, <i>non . . . l' uno nè l' altro, nè l' uno nè l' altro</i> , pron. or adj. |
| Any more, <i>più, ne . . . più</i> , pron.                                  | No, <i>non . . . nessuno, non . . . alcuno</i> , adj.                               |
| Anything, <i>qualcheduna</i> , pron.  | Nobody, <i>non . . . nessuno</i> , pron.  |
| Anything else, <i>altro</i> , pron.   | No more, <i>non ne . . . più</i> , pron., <i>non . . . più</i> , adj.               |
| Both, <i>tutti e due, l' uno e l' altro, ambedue</i> , pron. or adj.        | None, <i>non ne . . .</i> , pron.   |
| Certain, <i>certo</i> , adj.  | Nothing, <i>non . . . niente, non . . . nulla</i> , pron.                           |
| Each, <i>ogni, ciascuno, ognuno</i> , adj.                                  | Nothing else, <i>non . . . più niente, non . . . più nulla</i> , pron.              |
| Either, <i>l' uno o l' altro</i> , pron. or adj.                            | Others, <i>altri</i> (see 91, d), pron.   |
| Every, <i>ogni, ciascuno, ognuno, ciascheduno</i> , adj.                    | Several, <i>parecchi</i> (fem. <i>parecchie</i> ), pron. or adj.                    |
| Everybody, <i>tutti</i> (pl.), <i>ciascheduno, ciascuno, ognuno</i> , pron. | Somebody, <i>qualcheduno, qualcuno</i> , pron.                                      |
| Everything, <i>tutto</i> , pron.  | Something, <i>qualcheduna</i> , pron.   |
| Few, a few, <i>pochi</i> (pl.), pron. or adj.                               | Such, <i>tal</i> , adj.   |
| However much, (or many), <i>per quanto (-ti)</i> , adj.                     | Such a, <i>un tale</i> , adj. (but also pron. in Ital., meaning "so-and-so").       |
| Little, <i>poco</i> , pron. or adj.   | Whatever, <i>qualunque</i> (invariable), adj.                                       |
| Less, <i>meno</i> , pron. or adj.*  |   |
| Many, <i>molto</i> , pron. or adj.†   |   |
| More, <i>più</i> , pron. or adj.  |   |
| Much, <i>molto</i> , pron. or adj.  |   |

\* "Less" = "smaller" is *più piccolo*. † "A great many" is *molte*.

a. The verb used with *nessúno*, *alcúno*, *niènte*, *núlla* (meaning "no," "nobody," "nothing") must be preceded by *non*, "not," unless the pronoun begins the clause.

Ex. : *Non ho visto nessúno*, I have seen nobody.

*Nessún pópolo lo possiède*, no people possesses it.

b. "Nothing" followed by an adjective is *niènte di*.

Ex. : *Non avètte niènte di buòno*, you have nothing good.

c. *Ciascúno*, *ciaschedúno*, *ognúno*, *nessúno*, and *alcúno* when used adjectively are inflected like *úno* (see 14, 15).

d. *Altrúi*, "another," "others," "our neighbor," is invariable, and is not used as subject of a verb : as *con altrúi*, "with other people" ; *chi áma altrúi áma sè stésso*, "he who loves his neighbor loves himself." The prepositions *di* and *a* are sometimes omitted before it : as *la móstro altrúi*, "I point her out to others" ; *la vòglia altrúi*, "the will of another."

## EXERCISE 21.

Per mutáre!<sup>1</sup> Riccárdo díce<sup>2</sup> mále di qualchedúno. Che brútto vízio è mái quéllo ! A sentír Riccárdo, tútti son ásiní, tútti sóno cattívi ; di buòni e di brávi non c' è che lúi. Ma ora-mái ognúno ha conosciúto di che pánni vèste,<sup>3</sup> e nessúno gli créde più. Se fósse brávo e buòno, si guarderèbbe dal dir mále di quéstó e di quéllo, ánche quándo ne avésse quálche ragióne. Figurátevi, dúnque, se può<sup>4</sup> éssere buòno e brávo lúi che díce mále di tútti ! Sòrte, ripèto, che nessúno gli créde più, e quándo si sènte dir mále di qualchedúno, e si sa<sup>5</sup> che c' è Riccárdo di mèzzo,<sup>6</sup> ognúno si affrétta a rispóndere : Se l' ha détto quel maldicènte di Riccárdo, non è véro núlla dicèrto.

<sup>1</sup> There he is at it again ! <sup>2</sup> *Dire*. <sup>3</sup> What sort of a fellow he is. <sup>4</sup> *Potére*. <sup>5</sup> *Sapére*. <sup>6</sup> At the bottom of it.

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS ARRANGED ACCORDING TO CONJUGATION.\*

**92.** This list contains no compound verbs except those which differ in conjugation from their simple verbs and those for which no simple verb exists in Italian. It does not include a few irregular defective verbs † seldom or never used in modern Italian, which are to be found in the Alphabetical List of Irregular and Defective Verbs beginning on page 100.

With every verb its irregular forms are given: in the same line with the infinitive are the present participle (if it be needed to show the original form of the infinitive), the first person singular of the preterite indicative, the past participle, and the first person singular of the future indicative (if the future be contracted); immediately below are the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive, if these parts be peculiar. With the aid of the above forms the whole verb can be constructed (see 65, 66).

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 1. Andáre, *to go*, andái, andáto; andrò.

| PRES. IND.         |          | IMPER.  | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|--------------------|----------|---------|-------------|----------|
| Vádo <i>or</i> vo, | andíamo, | Va',    | Váda,       | andíamo, |
| vái,               | andáte,  | andáte. | váda,       | andíate, |
| va,                | vánno.   |         | váda,       | vádano.  |

---

\* This list is meant to be used in learning the verbs; the list on page 100 is intended for reference.

† They are: *digere, arrògere, còlere, licere, percipere, rièdere, and soffòlere.*

2. *Fàre, to do, facêndo, fèci, fátto ; farò.*

| PRES. IND.                     | IMPER. | PRES. SUBJ.       |
|--------------------------------|--------|-------------------|
| Fáccio <i>or</i> fo, facciámo, | Fa',   | Fáccia, facciámo, |
| fái, fáte,                     | fáte.  | fáccia, facciáte, |
| fa, fánno.                     |        | fáccia, fácciano. |

3. *Dàre, to give, dièdi, dátò ; darò. Imp. subj. déssi.*

| PRES. IND. | PRET. IND.                    | IMPER. | PRES. SUBJ.            |
|------------|-------------------------------|--------|------------------------|
| Do,        | Dièdi ( <i>or</i> détti),     |        | Día,                   |
| dái,       | désti,                        | Da',   | día,                   |
| dà,        | diède ( <i>or</i> détte),     |        | día,                   |
| diámo,     | démmo,                        |        | diámo,                 |
| dáte,      | déste,                        | dáte.  | diáte,                 |
| dánno.     | dièdero ( <i>or</i> détterò). |        | díano <i>or</i> díeno. |

4. *Stàre (68, a), to stand, stétti, státò ; starò. Imp. subj. stéssi.*

| PRES. IND. | PRET. IND. | IMPER. | PRES. SUBJ.              |
|------------|------------|--------|--------------------------|
| Sto,       | Stétti,    |        | Stía,                    |
| stái,      | stésti,    | Sta',  | stía,                    |
| sta,       | stétte,    |        | stía,                    |
| stiámo,    | stémmo,    |        | stiámo,                  |
| státe,     | stéste,    | státe. | stiáte,                  |
| stánno.    | stétterò.  |        | stíano <i>or</i> stíeno. |

SECOND CONJUGATION.

5. *Avére, to have, èbbi, avúto ; avrò. See 53, b.*

6. *Sapére, to know, sèppi, sapúto ; saprò.*

| PRES. IND.    | IMPER.    | PRES. SUBJ.       |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------|
| So, sappiámo, | Sáppi,    | Sáppia, sappiámo, |
| sái, sapéte,  | sappiáte. | sáppia, sappiáte, |
| sa, sánno.    |           | sáppia, sáppiano. |

7. *Cadére, to fall, cáddi, cadúto ; cadrò *or* caderò.*

| PRES. IND.                         | PRES. SUBJ.                        |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Cádo (cággio), cadiámo (caggiámo), | Cáda (cággia), cadiámo (caggiámo), |
| cádi, cadéte,                      | cáda (cággia), cadiáte,            |
| cáde, cádonò (caggionò).           | cáda (cággia), cádanò (caggiano).  |

8. *Dovère, to owe, dovéi (or dovétti), dovúto ; dovrò. Imper. lacking.*

| PRES. IND.                                       | PRES. SUBJ.          |
|--|----------------------|
| Dèvo <i>or</i> dèbbo ( <i>or</i> dèggio),        | Dèbba (dèggia),      |
| dèvi,  | dèbba (dèggia),      |
| dève <i>or</i> dèbbe,                            | dèbba (dèggia),      |
| dobbiámo (deggiámo)                              | dobbiámo,            |
| dovéte,  | dobbiáte,            |
| dèvono <i>or</i> dèbbono ( <i>or</i> dèggiono).* | dóbbiano (dèggiano). |

9. *Sedére, to sit, sedéi or sedétti, sedúto.*

| PRES. IND.   | PRES. SUBJ.  |
|--|--|
| Sièdo <i>or</i> sèggo, sedíamo <i>or</i> seggiámo, | Sièda <i>or</i> sègga, sediámo <i>or</i> seggiámo, |
| sièdi, sedéte,                                     | sièda <i>or</i> sègga, sediáte,                    |
| siède, sièdono <i>or</i> sèggono.                  | sièda <i>or</i> sègga, sièdano <i>or</i> sèggano.  |

10. *Vedére, to see, vídi, vedúto or vísto ; vedrò. †*

| PRES. IND.                           | PRES. SUBJ.                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Védo (véggo <i>or</i> véggio),       | Véda (végga <i>or</i> véggia),       |
| védi,                                | véda (végga <i>or</i> véggia),       |
| véde,                                | véda (végga <i>or</i> véggia),       |
| vediámo (veggiámo),                  | vediámo (veggiámo),                  |
| vedéte,                              | vediáte (veggiáte),                  |
| védono (véggono <i>or</i> véggiono). | védano (véggano <i>or</i> véggiano). |

11. *Giacére, to lie, giáacqui, giaciúto.*

| PRES. IND.          | PRES. SUBJ.         |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Giáccio, giacciámo, | Giáccia, giacciámo, |
| giáci, giacéte,     | giáccia, giacciáte, |
| giáce, giacciono.   | giáccia, giacciano. |

12. *Piacére, to please : like giacére (11).*

13. *Tacére, to be silent : like giacére (11).*

14. *Solére, to be wont, sôlito. Pret., fut., cond., and imper. lacking.*

\* Also *dèono, dènno.*

† *Provvedére : provvederò.*

| PRES. IND. |           | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Sôglio,    | sogliámo, | Sôglia,     | sogliámo, |
| suôli,     | soléte,   | sôglia,     | sogliáte, |
| suôle,     | sôgliono. | sôglia,     | sôgliano. |

15. Dolére, *to grieve*, dôlsi, dolúto ; dorrò.

| PRES. IND.              |                             | PRES. SUBJ.             |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Dôlgo <i>or</i> dôglio, | dogliámo,                   | Dôlga <i>or</i> dôglia, | dogliámo,                   |
| duôli,                  | doléte,                     | dôlga <i>or</i> dôglia, | dogliáte,                   |
| duôle,                  | dôlgano <i>or</i> dôgliono. | dôlga <i>or</i> dôglia, | dôlgano <i>or</i> dôgliano. |

16. Rimanére, *to remain*, rimási, rimásto *or* rimáso ; rimarrò.

| PRES. IND. |            | PRES. SUBJ. |            |
|------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| Rimángo,   | rimaniámo, | Rimánga,    | rimaniámo, |
| rimáni,    | rimanéte,  | rimánga,    | rimaniáte, |
| rimáne,    | rimángono. | rimánga,    | rimángano. |

17. Tenére, *to hold*, ténni, tenúto ; terrò.

| PRES. IND. |          | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Têngo,     | teniámo, | Tênga,      | teniámo, |
| tiêni,     | tenéte,  | tênga,      | teniáte, |
| tiêne,     | têngono. | tênga,      | têngano. |

18. Valére, *to be worth*, válsi, valúto *or* válso ; varrò.

| PRES. IND.              |                             | PRES. SUBJ.             |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Válgo <i>or</i> váglio, | vagliámo,                   | Válga <i>or</i> váglia, | vagliámo,                   |
| váli,                   | valéte,                     | válga <i>or</i> váglia, | vagliáte,                   |
| vále,                   | válgono <i>or</i> vágliono. | válga <i>or</i> váglia, | válgano <i>or</i> vágliano. |

19. Volére, *to wish*, vòlli, volúto ; vorrò.

| PRES. IND. |           | IMPER.    | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Vôglio,    | vogliámo, | Vôgli,    | Vôglia,     | vogliámo, |
| vuôli,     | voléte,   | vogliáte. | vôglia,     | vogliáte, |
| vuôle,     | vôgliono. |           | vôglia,     | vôgliano. |



20. Parére, *to seem*, párvì, parúto *or* pársò ; parrò.

| PRES. IND. |                           | PRES. SUBJ. |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Páio,      | pariámo <i>or</i> paiámo, | Páia,       | pariámo <i>or</i> paiámo, |
| pári,      | paréte,                   | páia,       | paiáte,                   |
| páre,      | páiono.                   | páia,       | páiano.                   |

21. Potére, *to be able*, potéi, potúto ; potrò. *Imper. lacking.*

| PRES. IND. |           | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Pôso,      | possíamo, | Pôssa,      | possíamo, |
| puði,      | potéte,   | pôssa,      | possíate, |
| puð,       | pôssono.  | pôssa,      | pôssano.  |

22. Persuadére, *to persuade*, persuási, persuáso.23. Calére, *to matter*, cálse, calúto. *Impersonal. Fut., cond., and imper. lacking.*

| PRES. IND. | PRES. SUBJ. |
|------------|-------------|
| Cale.      | Cágliä.     |

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## FIRST CLASS: -si, -so.

24. Accëndere, *to light*, accési, accéso.
25. Allúdere, *to allude*, allúsi (alludéi), allúso.
26. Árdere, *to burn*, ársi, árso.
27. Assidere, *to besiege*, assísi, assíso.
28. Chiúdere, *to shut*, chiúsi, chiúso.
29. Conquidere, *to conquer*, conquísi, conquíso.
30. Contúdere, *to bruise*, contúsi, contúso.
31. Córre, *to run*, córsi, córso.
32. Decidere, *to decide*, decísi, decíso.
33. Difëndere, *to defend*, difési (difendéi), diféso (difendúto).
34. Dividere, *to divide*, divísi, divíso.
35. Elidere, *to elide*, elísi, elíso.

36. Elúdere, *to elude*, elúsi (eludéi or eludétti), elúso.
37. Esplòdere, *to explode*, esplòsi, esplòso.
38. Intrídere, *to dilute*, intrísi, intríso.
39. Intrúdere, *to intrude*, intrúsi, intrúso.
40. Invádere, *to invade*, invási, inváso.
41. Lêdere, *to offend*, lêsi, lêso.
42. Lúdere, *to play*, lúsi, lúso.
43. Mêrgere, *to plunge*, mêrsi, mêrso.
44. Môrdere, *to bite*, môrsi, môrso.
45. Offêndere, *to offend*, offêsi, offêso.
46. Pêrdere, *to lose*, perdéi or pêrsi, perdúto or pêrso.
47. Prêndere, *to take*, prési (prendéi), présso.
48. Rádere, *to shave*, rási (radéi), ráso.
49. Rêndere, *to render*, rési (rendéi), réso (rendúto).
50. Rídere, *to laugh*, risi, ríso.
51. Rifúlgere, *to shine*, rifúlsi, rifúlso.
52. Ródere, *to gnaw*, rósi, róso.
53. Scêndere, *to descend*, scési, scêso.
54. Scêrnere, *to discern*, scernéi or scêrsi, scernúto or scêrso.
55. Sospêndere, *to suspend*, sospési, sospéso.
56. Spárgere, *to scatter*, spársi, spárso.
57. Spêndere, *to spend*, spési, spéso.
58. Spêrgere, *to disperse*, spêrsi, spêrso.
59. Têndere (*trans.*), *to extend*, tési, téso.
60. Têrgere, *to wipe*, têrsi, têrso.
61. Uccídere, *to kill*, uccísi, uccíso.

## MORE IRREGULAR.

62. Espêllere, *to expel*, espúlsi, espúlso.
63. Fòndere, *to melt*, fúsi (fondéi), fúso (fondúto).
64. Chiêdere, *to ask*, chiési, chiêsto.
65. Nascóndere, *to hide*, nascósi, nascósto.
66. Pórre, *to put*, ponêdo, pósi, pósto ; porrò.

| PRES. IND. |                      | PRES. SUBJ. |                      |
|------------|----------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| Póngo,     | poniámo (ponghiámo), | Pónga,      | poniámo (ponghiámo), |
| póni,      | ponéte.              | pónga,      | poniáte,             |
| póne,      | póngono.             | pónga,      | póngano.             |

67. Rispondere, *to answer*, rispósi, rispósto.

### SECOND CLASS: -si, -to.

68. Assôrbere, *to absorb*, assôrsi, assôrto.
69. Distinguere, *to distinguish*, distinsi, distinto.
70. Êrgere, *to erect*, êrsi, êrto.
71. Fingere, *to feign*, finsi, finto.
72. Frângere, *to break*, frânsi, frânto.
73. Consúmere, *to consume*, consúnsi, consúnto.
74. Pôrgere, *to present*, pôrsi, pôrto.
75. Redímere, *to redeem*, redênsi (rediméi), redênto.
76. Scindere, *to sever*, scindéi or scînsi, scindúto or scînto.
77. Scôrgere, *to perceive*, scôrsi, scôrto.
78. Sôrgere, *to rise*, sôrsi, sôrto.
79. Spándere, *to spill*, spânsi, spânto.
80. Spôrgere, *to project*, spôrsi, spôrto.
81. Tôrcere, *to twist*, tôrsi, tôrto.
82. Vîncere, *to conquer*, vînsi, vînto.
83. Vôlgere, *to turn*, vôlsi, vôlto.

### MORE IRREGULAR.

84. Assôlvère, *to absolve*, assôlsi (assolvétti), assôlto or assolúto.
85. Cògliere (côrrè), *to gather*, còlsi, còlto ; coglierò or corrò.

| PRES. IND. |           | PRES. SUBJ. |           |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Còlgo,     | cogliámo, | Còlga,      | cogliámo, |
| cògli,     | cogliéte, | còlga,      | cogliáte, |
| còglie,    | còlgono.  | còlga,      | còlgano.  |

86. Scégliere (scérre), *to choose: like* cògliere (85).
87. Sciògliere (sciòrrè), *to untie: like* cògliere (85).

88. Togliere (tòrre), *to take: like cogliere* (85).

89. Giungere (giugnere), *to arrive, giúnsi, giúnto; giungerò* (giugnerò).

## PRES. IND.

Giúngo *or* giúgno,  
giúngi *or* giúgni,  
giúnge *or* giúgne,  
giungiámo *or* giugniámo,  
giungéte *or* giugnéte,  
giúngono *or* giúgnono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Giúnga *or* giúgna,  
giúnga *or* giúgna,  
giúnga *or* giúgna,  
giungiámo *or* giugniámo,  
giungiáte *or* giugniáte,  
giúngano *or* giúgnano.

90. Cingere (cìgnere), *to gird: like giungere* (89).

91. Mungere (múgnere), *to milk: like giungere* (89).

92. Piangere (piágnere), *to weep: like giungere* (89).

93. Pingere (pìgnere), *to paint: like giungere* (89).

94. Pungere (púgnere), *to prick: like giungere* (89).

95. Spègnere (spègnere), *to extinguish: like giungere* (89),  
*except that the forms with gn are the usual ones throughout.*

96. Spingere (spìgnere), *to push: like giungere* (89).

97. Stringere (strìgnere), *to bind: like giungere* (89).

98. Tingere (tìgnere), *to dye: like giungere* (89).

99. Ungere (úgnere), *to anoint: like giungere* (89).

100. Vèllere (vèrre), *to tear up, vèlsi, vèlto.*

## PRES. IND.

Vèllo *or* vèlgo, velliámo,  
vèlli, velléte,  
vèlle, vèllono *or* vèlgono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Vèlla *or* vèlga, velliámo,  
vèlla *or* vèlga, velliáte,  
vèlla *or* vèlga, vèllano *or* vèlgano.

## THIRD CLASS: -ssi, -sso.

101. Connètere, *to connect, connèssi* (connettéi), connèso  
(connettúto).

102. Genuflèttere, *to kneel, genuflèssi, genuflèssso.*

103. Riflettere, *to reflect*,\* riflettéi or riflèssi, riflèttuto or riflèssu.  
 104. Mettere, *to put*, méssi or mísi, méssu.  
 105. Discutere, *to discuss*, discússi, discússu.  
 106. Esprimere, *to express*, esprèssi, esprèssu.  
 107. Fêndere, *to split*, fendéi (fendétti or fèssi), fendúto or fèssu.  
 108. Figgere (figere), *to fix*, fissi (fisi), fisso (fiso) or fitto.  
 109. Rilúcere, *to shine*, rilússi or rilucéi. *Past part. lacking.*  
 110. Succedere, *to happen*, succèssi or succedéi, succèssu or succedúto.  
 111. Muôvere, *to move*, movêndo, môssi, môssu.  
 112. Scuôtere, *to shake*, scotêndo, scôssi, scôssu.

## FOURTH CLASS: -ssi, -tto.

113. Affliggere, *to afflict*, afflissi, afflitto.  
 114. Cuôcere, *to cook*, cocêndo, cossi, cotto.  
 115. Dirigere, *to direct*, dirèssi, dirétto.  
 116. Friggere, *to fry*, frissi, fritto.  
 117. Lêggere, *to read*, lèssi, lètto.  
 118. Negligere, *to neglect*, neglèssi, neglétto.  
 119. Protêggere, *to protect*, protèssi, protétto.  
 120. Règgere, *to support*, rèssi, rètto.  
 121. Scrivere, *to write*, scrissi, scrítto.  
 122. Strúggere, *to melt*, strússi, strútto.

## MORE IRREGULAR.

123. Condúrre, *to conduct*, conducêndo, condússi, condóto ;  
 condurrò.

| PRES. IND. |             | PRES. SUBJ. |             |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Condúco,   | conduciámo, | Condúca,    | conduciámo, |
| condúci,   | conducéte,  | condúca,    | conduciáte, |
| condúce,   | condúcono.  | condúca,    | condúcano.  |

\* When *riflettere* means "to reflect light" it is irregular; when it means "to meditate" it is regular.

124. Trarre (tràere), *to drag*, traêndo, tràssi, tràtto ; trarrò.

| PRES. IND.     |                              | PRES. SUBJ. |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| Trággo,        | traiámo <i>or</i> traggiámo, | Trágga,     | traiámo <i>or</i> traggiámo, |
| trái (trággi), | traéte,                      | trágga,     | traiáte,                     |
| tráe (trágge), | trággono.                    | trágga,     | trággano.                    |

## NOT CLASSIFIED.

125. Bère *or* bévere, *to drink*, bevêndo, bévvi (bevétti), bevúto ; berò *or* beberò.

| PRES. IND.          |                           | PRES. SUBJ.         |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Bêvo <i>or</i> béo, | beviámo <i>or</i> beiámo, | Béva <i>or</i> béa, | beviámo <i>or</i> beiámo, |
| bévi <i>or</i> béi, | bevéte <i>or</i> beéte,   | béva <i>or</i> béa, | beviáte <i>or</i> beiáte, |
| béve <i>or</i> bée, | bévono <i>or</i> béono.   | béva <i>or</i> béa, | bévano <i>or</i> béano.   |

126. Conóscere, *to know*, conóbbi, conosciúto.127. Créscere, *to grow*, crebbi, cresciúto.128. Náscere, *to be born*, náquì, náto.129. Nuôcere, *to harm*, nocêndo, nôcqui, nociúto.130. Esígere, *to exact*, esigéi, esátto.131. Esístere, *to exist*, esistéi, esistíto.132. Êssere, *to be*, fúì, státo ; sarò. See 53, a (and 67, b).133. Piôvere, *to rain*, piôvve (piovè), piovúto. *Impersonal.*134. Rómpere, *to break*, rúppi, rótto.135. Sólvere, *to undo*, solvéi (solvétti), solúto.136. Vivere, *to live*, vissi, vissúto *or* vivúto.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

137. Apríre, *to open*, apríi *or* apêrsi, apêrto.138. Copríre, *to cover*: *like* apríre (137).139. Offríre (offeríre), *to offer*, offríi (offeríi) *or* offêrsi, offêrto.140. Soffríre (sofferíre), *to suffer*: *like* offríre (139).141. Convertíre, *to convert*, convertíi *or* convêrsi, convertíto *or* convêrso.

142. Costruire (construire), *to construct*, co(n)strùssi *or* co(n)-strulì, co(n)struito *or* co(n)strùtto.  
 143. Digerire, *to digest*, digerìi, digerìto *or* digèsto.  
 144. Esaurire, *to exhaust*, esaurìi, esaurìto *or* esàusto.  
 145. Seppellire, *to bury*, seppellìi, seppellìto *or* sepólto.  
 146. Seguire, *to follow*, seguìi, segultó.

## PRES. IND.

Sèguo (sièguo), seguiámo,  
 sègui (siègui), seguíte,  
 sègue (siègue), sèguono, sièguono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Sègua (siègua), seguiámo,  
 sègua (siègua), seguiate,  
 sègua (siègua), sèguano (sièguano).

147. Cucire, *to sew*, cucìi, cucító.

## PRES. IND.

Cúcio, cucíamo,  
 cúci, cucíte,  
 cúce, cúciono.

## PRES. SUBJ.

Cúcia, cucíamo,  
 cúcia, cuciate,  
 cúcia, cúciano.

148. Sdrucire *or* sdruscire, *to rip: like* cucire (147).  
 149. Empire *or* émpiere, *to fill*, empièndo, empli, empító.

## PRES. IND.

Èmpio (empísco), empiámo,  
 émpi (empísci), empíte,  
 émpie (empísce), émpiono (empíscono).

## PRES. SUBJ.

Empia, empiámo,  
 émpia, empiate,  
 émpia, émpiano.

150. Morire, *to die*, morlì, mórto; morirò *or* morrò.

## PRES. IND.

Muòio (muòro),  
 muòri,  
 muòre,  
 moriámo *or* muoiámo,  
 moríte,  
 muòiono (muòrono).

## PRES. SUBJ.

muòia *or* muòra,  
 muòia *or* muòra,  
 muòia *or* muòra,  
 moriámo *or* muoiámo,  
 muoiáte,  
 muòiano *or* muòrano.

151. Sparire, *to disappear*, sparìi (spárvi *or* spársi), sparító (spárso).

PRES. IND.  
 Sparísco (spáio),  
 sparísci,  
 sparísce,  
 spariámo,  
 sparíte,  
 sparíscono (spáiono).

PRES. SUBJ.  
 Sparísca (spáia),  
 sparísca (spáia),  
 sparísca (spáia),  
 spariámo,  
 spariáte,  
 sparíscono (spáiano).

152. Dîre, *to say*, dicêndo, dissî, dêtto ; dirò.

| PRES. IND. |          | IMPER. | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|------------|----------|--------|-------------|----------|
| Dîco,      | diciámo, | Dî,    | Dîca,       | diciámo, |
| dîci,      | dîte,    | dîte.  | dîca,       | diciáte, |
| dîce,      | dîcono.  |        | dîca,       | dîcano.  |

153. Sálire, *to ascend*, sálî or sálsi, salíto.

| PRES. IND.       |                      | PRES. SUBJ.      |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Sálgo (salisco), | saliámo or sagliámo, | Sálga (salísca), | saliámo or sagliámo, |
| sáli (salísci),  | salíte,              | sálga (salísca), | sagliáte,            |
| sálc (salísce),  | sálgono (salíscono). | sálga (salísca), | sálgano (salíscono). |

154. Veníre, *to come*, vénni, venúto ; verrò.

| PRES. IND. |          | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Vêngo,     | veniámo, | Vênga,      | veniámo, |
| viêni,     | veníte,  | vênga,      | veniáte, |
| viêne,     | vêngono. | vênga,      | vêngano. |

155. Udîre, *to hear*, udiî, udíto.

| PRES. IND. |         | PRES. SUBJ. |         |
|------------|---------|-------------|---------|
| Ôdo,       | udiámo, | Ôda,        | udiámo, |
| ôdi,       | udíte,  | ôda,        | udiáte, |
| ôde,       | ôdono.  | ôda,        | ôdano.  |

156. Uscíre (escíre), *to go out*, uscî, uscíto.

| PRES. IND. |          | PRES. SUBJ. |          |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Êsco,      | uscíámo, | Êsca,       | uscíámo, |
| êsci,      | uscíte,  | êsca,       | uscíáte, |
| êsce,      | êscono.  | êsca,       | êscano.  |



## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

**93.** Following is a list of the Italian irregular and defective verbs. With every defective verb is a list of its existing forms. Every irregular verb is followed by a number referring to the list beginning on page 88. Compound verbs have, in general, been excluded from this list, unless they differ in conjugation from the simple verbs from which they come (see 68, *a*). The commonest prefixes are: *a-* (corresponding to the preposition *a*), after which the simple verb doubles its initial consonant; *as-* (= Latin *abs*); *com-, con-, co-, cor-* (= prep. *con*); *de-, di-* (= prep. *di*); *dis-* (= Lat. *dis-*); *e-, es-* (= Lat. *ex*); *im-, in-* (= prep. *in*); *o-* (= Lat. *ob*), after which the verb generally doubles its initial consonant; *per* (= prep. *per*); *pre-* (= Lat. *præ-* or *prae-*); *pro-* (= Lat. *pro-*); *r-, re-, ri-* (= Lat. *re-*); *s-* (= Lat. *ex-* or *dis-*); *so-* or *su-* (= Lat. *sub*), after which the verb generally doubles its initial consonant; *sopra-, sopr-* (= prep. *sópra*); *sor-* (= prep. *su*); *sos-* (= Lat. *sub*); *sotto-, sott-* (= prep. *sótto*); *tra-* (= prep. *tra*).

Accadére, *see* cadére, 7.

Accêdere, 24.

Accòrgere, *see* scòrgere, 77.

Acquisìre (*defect.*): acquisìto.

Addúrre, *see* condúrre, 123.

Affiggere, 113.

Álgere (*defect.*): *Pret.* álsi, etc.

Alládere, 25.

Ancídere, *see* uccídere, 61.

Andáre, 1.

Ángere (*defect.*): *Pres.* ánge, ángono.

Annêttère, *see* connêttère, 101.

Antivedére, *Past Part. only* antivedúto, otherwise like vedére, 10.

Apparíre, *see* sparíre, 151.

Appêdere, *see* sospêdere, 55.

Apríre, 137.

Árdere, 26.

Arrògere (*defect.*): *arrogêndo*; *ar-rôso* or *arrôto*; *Pres.* arròge; *Imp.* arrogéva; *Pret.* arròse, arròsero.

Ascêdere, *see* scêdere, 53.

- Ascóndere, *see* nascóndere, 65.  
 Assídere, 27.  
 Assistere, *see* esístere, 131.  
 Assólvere, 84.  
 Assórbere, 68.  
 Assumere, *see* consúmere, 73.  
 Avére, 5.  
 Bére, 125.  
 Bévere, *see* bére, 125.  
 Cadére, 7.  
 Calére, 23.  
 Cápere (*defect.*): *Pres.* cápe; *Imp.* capéva.  
 Cédere, *generally regular, sometimes has a Pres. cèssi.*  
 Chêrere (*defect.*): *Pres.* chéro, chère.  
 Chiêdere, 64.  
 Chiúdere, 28.  
 Cíngere, 90.  
 Circóndere, *see* decídere, 32.  
 Cògliere, 85.  
 Còlere (*defect.*). colêndo, còlto; *Pres.* còlo, còle.  
 Comparíre, *see* sparíre, 151.  
 Comprímere, *see* esprímere, 106.  
 Concédere, *see* succédere, 110.  
 Concútere, *see* discútere, 105.  
 Condúrre, 123.  
 Connéttere, 101.  
 Conóscere, 126.  
 Conquídere, 29.  
 Consístere, *see* esístere, 131.  
 Constáre *is reg.*  
 Construíre, 142.  
 Consúmere, 73.  
 Contrastáre *is reg.*  
 Controvèrtere (*defect.*): *Pres. and Imp. regular.*  
 Contúndere, 30.  
 Convèrgere, *reg. verb, has no Past Part.*  
 Convertíre, 141.  
 Copríre, 138.  
 Còrre, *see* cògliere, 85.  
 Córre, 31.  
 Corrispóndere, *see* rispóndere, 67.  
 Costruíre, 142.  
 Créscere, 127.  
 Cuócere, 114.  
 Cucíre, 147.  
 Dáre, 3.  
 Decídere, 32.  
 Dedúrre, *see* condúrre, 123.  
 Delínquere, *reg. verb, has no Past Part., and its Pret. (which is delinquétti) is rare.*  
 Deprímere, *see* esprímere, 106.  
 Desístere, *see* esístere, 131.  
 Difêndere, 33.  
 Digeríre, 143.  
 Díre, 152.  
 Dirígere, 115.  
 Discéndere, *see* scéndere, 53.  
 Discútere, 105.  
 Dissólvere, *see* sólvere, 135.  
 Dissuadére, *see* persuadére, 22.  
 Distáre, *reg. in Pres. of all moods, Pres. Part. lacking, otherwise like stáre, 4.*  
 Distíngere, 69.  
 Distrúggere, *see* strúggere, 122.  
 Divedére (*defect.*): *only Infín. used.*  
 Divídere, 34.  
 Dolére, 15.  
 Dovére, 8.  
 Elêggere, *see* lêggere, 117.  
 Elídere, 35.  
 Eládere, 36.  
 Êmpiere, *see* empíre, 149.  
 Empíre, 149.  
 Êrgere, 70.

- Erigere, *see* dirigere, 115.  
 Esaurire, 144.  
 Escire, *see* uscire, 156.  
 Escludere, *see* chiudere, 28.  
 Esigere, 130.  
 Esistere, 131.  
 Espellere, 62.  
 Espiudere, 37.  
 Esprimere, 106.  
 Essere, 132.  
 Estinguere, *see* distinguere, 69.  
 Estollere (*defect.*): *Pret. and Past Part. lacking; rest regular.*  
 Färe, 2.  
 Fendere, 107.  
 Fiudere (*defect.*): *Pres. fiêdo, fiêdi, fiêde, fiêdono; Fut., Cond., Imper., and Past Part. lacking; rest regular.*  
 Figgere, 108.  
 Fingere, 71.  
 Folcire (*defect.*): *Pres. fôlce; Imp. Subj. folcisse.*  
 Fondere, 63.  
 Frangere, 72.  
 Friggere, 116.  
 Fângere (*defect.*): *Pres., Imp., and Fut. regular.*  
 Genuflettire, 102.  
 Giacere, 11.  
 Gire (*defect.*): *Pres. gîte; Imper., gite; Pres. Subj., giâmo, giâte; Pres. Part. lacking; rest regular.*  
 Giângere, 89.  
 Illudere, *see* lûdere, 42.  
 Impellere, *see* espellere, 62.  
 Imprimere, *see* esprimere, 106.  
 Incidere, *see* decidere, 32.  
 Incûtere, *see* discutere, 105.  
 Indurre, *see* condurre, 123.  
 Insistere, *see* esistere, 131.  
 Instäre *is reg.*  
 Instruire, *see* costruire, 142.  
 Intercedere, *see* succedere, 110.  
 Intridere, 38.  
 Introdurre, *see* condurre, 123.  
 Intrudere, 39.  
 Invadere, 40.  
 Invalere, *Past Part. only invälso, otherwise like valere, 18.*  
 Ire (*defect.*): *Pres. îte; Imp. regular; Pret. îsti, îste; Fut. irêmo, irête, irânno; Imper. îte; Imp. Subj. îsse, îste, îssero; Past Part. îto.*  
 Istruire, *see* costruire, 142.  
 Lécere, *see* lîcere.  
 Lèdere, 41.  
 Lèggere, 117.  
 Lîcere (*defect.*): *Pres. lîce or lêce; Past part. lîcito or lécito.*  
 Lûcere (*defect.*): *Past Part. lacking, also first pers. sing. of Indic. Pres. and Pret.; rest regular.*  
 Lûdere, 42.  
 Mantenere, *see* tenere, 17.  
 Mêrgere, 43.  
 Mèttire, 104.  
 Mòlcere (*defect.*): *Pres. mòlce; Imp. molcéva.*  
 Mòrdere, 44.  
 Morire, 150.  
 Muovere, 111.  
 Mûngere, 91.  
 Nâscere, 128.  
 Nascòndere, 65.  
 Neglîgere, 118.  
 Nuocere, 129.  
 Offendere, 45.  
 Offerire, *see* offrire, 139.

- Offrìre, 139.  
 Olìre (*defect.*): *Imp.* olìva, olìvi, olìva, olìvano.  
 Opprìmere, *see* esprìmere, 106.  
 Ostàre *is reg.*  
 Parère, 20.  
 Pàve (*defect., Infim. not found*).  
 Percipere (*defect.*): *Pres., Imp., and Fut. regular*; *Past Part.* percètto.  
 Percuòtere, *see* scuòtere, 112.  
 Pèrdere, 46.  
 Permanère, *see* rimanère, 16.  
 Persistère, *see* esistère, 131.  
 Persuadère, 22.  
 Piàgere, 92.  
 Pìngere, 93.  
 Piòvere, 133.  
 Pòrgere, 74.  
 Pòrre, 66.  
 Possedère, *see* vedère, 9.  
 Potère, 21.  
 Precidère, *see* decidère, 32.  
 Prèndere, 47.  
 Presùmere, *see* consùmere, 73.  
 Prodúrre, *see* condúrre, 123.  
 Protèggere, 119.  
 Provvedère, *Fut. and Cond. uncontracted, otherwise like vedère*, 10.  
 Prúdere, *reg. verb, has no Past Part., and first and second persons are rare throughout.*  
 Púngere, 94.  
 Raccògliere, *see* cògliere, 85.  
 Rádere, 48.  
 Raggiúngere, *see* giúngere, 89.  
 Rêcere (*defect.*): *Pres.* rêce, rêciono.  
 Recidère, *see* decidère, 32.  
 Redímere, 75.  
 Règgere, 120.  
 Rêndere, 49.  
 Repèllere, *see* espèllere, 62.  
 Reprìmere, *see* esprìmere, 106.  
 Resistère, *see* esistère, 131.  
 Restàre *is reg.*  
 Rídere, 50.  
 Ridúrre, *see* condúrre, 123.  
 Rièdere (*defect.*): *Pres.* rièdo, rièdi, riède, rièdono; *Imp.* redìva; *Pret.* redì, redìrono; *Pres. Subj.* rièda, rièdano; *Imp. Subj.* riedàsse.  
 Riffèttere, 103.  
 Rifùlgere, 51.  
 Rilúcere, 109.  
 Rimanère, 16.  
 Risòlvere (*to dissolve*), *see* sòlvere, 135.  
 Risòlvere (*to determine*), *see* assòlvere, 84.  
 Rispondere, 67.  
 Ristàre, *see* stàre, 4.  
 Ródere, 52.  
 Rómpere, 134.  
 Salìre, 153.  
 Sapère, 6.  
 Scégliere, 86.  
 Scèndere, 53.  
 Scèrnere, 54.  
 Scèrre, *see* scégliere, 86.  
 Scíndere, 76.  
 Sciògliere, 87.  
 Sciòrre, *see* sciògliere, 87.  
 Scommèttre, *see* mèttere, 104.  
 Scopríre, *see* copríre, 138.  
 Scòrgere, 77.  
 Scrívere, 121.  
 Scuòtere, 112.  
 Sdrucíre, 148.  
 Sdruscíre, *see* sdrucíre, 148.  
 Sedère, 9.

- Sedúrre, *see* condúrre, 123.  
 Seguíre, 146.  
 Seppellíre, 145.  
 Sêrpere (*defect.*): *serpêndo*; *Pres.* sêrpo, sêrpi, sêrpe, sêrpono; *Imp. regular*; *Pres. Subj.* sêrpa, sêrpano.  
 Silére (*defect.*): *Pres.* sili, síle.  
 Soffólcere (*defect.*): *Pres.* soffólce; *Pres. Subj.* soffólce; *Past Part.* soffólto.  
 Sofferire, *see* soffíre, 140.  
 Soffíre, 140.  
 Solére, 14.  
 Sólvere, 135.  
 Sopprimere, *see* esprimere, 106.  
 Soprastáre, *see* stáre, 4.  
 Sórgere, 78.  
 Sospêndere, 55.  
 Sostáre, *is reg.*  
 Sottostáre, *see* stáre, 4.  
 Sovvertíre, *see* convertíre, 141.  
 Spándere, 79.  
 Spárgere, 56.  
 Sparíre, 151.  
 Spêgnere, 95.  
 Spêndere, 57.  
 Spêrgere, 58.  
 Spíngere, 96.  
 Spôrgere, 80.  
 Stáre, 4.  
 Strídere, *reg. verb. has no Past Part.*  
 Stríngere, 97.  
 Strúggere, 122.  
 Succêdere, 110.  
 Súggere, *reg. verb. has no Past Part.*  
 Sussistere, *see* esistere, 131.  
 Tacére, 13.  
 Tángere (*defect.*): *Pres.* tánge.  
 Têndere (*trans.*), 59.  
 Têndere (*intrans.*), *reg. verb. has no Past Part.*  
 Tenére, 17.  
 Têrgere, 60.  
 Tíngere, 98.  
 Tògliere, 88.  
 Tòllere (*defect.*): *Pres.* tòlli, tòlle; *Pres. Subj.* tòlla.  
 Tòrcere, 81.  
 Tòrpere (*defect.*): *Pres.* tòrpo, tòrpi, tòrpe, tòrpono; *Pres. Subj.* tòrpa.  
 Tòrre, *see* tògliere, 88.  
 Tradúrre, *see* condúrre, 123.  
 Tráere, *see* trárre, 124.  
 Trárre, 124.  
 Uccídere, 61.  
 Udíre, 155.  
 Úngere, 99.  
 Úrgere (*defect.*): *Pres.* úrge; *Imp.* urgéva, urgévano; *Imp. Subj.* urgésse, urgéssero.  
 Uscíre, 156.  
 Valére, 18.  
 Vedére, 10.  
 Vèllere, 100.  
 Veníre, 154.  
 Vêrre, *see* vèllere, 100.  
 Vígere (*defect.*): *Pres.* víge; *Imp.* vigéva.  
 Vilipêndere, *see* sospêndere, 55.  
 Vín cere, 82.  
 Vív ere, 136.  
 Volére, 19.  
 Vòlgere, 83.

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

- A**, to, at, in.  
**A'**, **ái**, **al**, *etc.* = **a** + *art.*  
**Abbellíto**, beautified.  
**Accompagnáre**, accompany.  
**Accòrgersi**, perceive.  
**Acqua**, water.  
**Ad**, *see A*.  
**Affacciársi**, place one's self (*at a window*).  
**Affrettáre**, hasten.  
**Agguantáre**, seize.  
**Agostíno**, Gus.  
**Álbero**, tree.  
**Ále**, wing.  
**Alétta**, little wing.  
**Alettína**, little wing.  
**Alfrédo**, Alfred.  
**Allontanáre**, send off.  
**Allóra**, then.  
**Áltro**, other.  
**Amáro**, bitter.  
**Ánche**, also, even.  
**Andár**, *see Andáre*.  
**Andáre**, go, to go, going.  
**Andársene**, go away.  
**Andáto**, gone.  
**Anéllo**, ring.  
**Animále**, animal.  
**Animalíno**, little creature.  
**Antíco**, old.  
**Ápe**, bee.  
**Appéna**, hardly.
- Appòsta**, on purpose.  
**Ária**, air.  
**Arricchíto**, enriched.  
**Arriváre**, arrive.  
**Arriváto**, having arrived.  
**Ásino**, ass.  
**Assalíre**, attack.  
**Assénzio**, wormwood.  
**Assolúto**, absolute.  
**Áttimo**, flash.  
**Avánti a**, in front of.  
**Avére**, have.  
**Avvedérsi di**, perceive.  
**Azionáccia**, *from Azíone*.  
**Azíone**, action.  
**Bábbo**, father, papa.  
**Badáre**, keep.  
**Bagnáre**, bathe.  
**Bambíno**, child.  
**Bárbaro**, barbarian.  
**Barbóne**, water-spaniel.  
**Baróne**, baron.  
**Bastóne**, stick.  
**Bel**, *see Bello*.  
**Bellíssimo**, very beautiful.  
**Bello**, beautiful, fine, kind.  
**Ben**, *see Bene*.  
**Bene**, well, nicely, much.  
**Bene**, good (*noun*).  
**Bócca**, mouth.  
**Bóve**, ox.  
**Brávo**, worthy.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Brilláre</b> , shine.                                 | <b>Città</b> , city.  |
| <b>Brútto</b> , ugly.                                    | <b>Cittadino</b> , citizen.   |
| <b>Bucáto</b> , pricked.                                 | <b>Códa</b> , tail.   |
| <b>Bugia</b> , lie.                                      | <b>Cógli</b> , col, <i>etc.</i> = <i>con</i> + <i>art.</i>          |
| <b>Búio</b> , dark.                                      | <b>Cògliere</b> , catch, pick.                                      |
| <b>Buóno</b> , good.                                     | <b>Cóllo</b> , neck.  |
| <b>Buttáre</b> , throw. <i>Buttar giù</i> = swallow.     | <b>Cóme</b> , as, like, how, when.                                  |
| <b>Cadére</b> , fall.                                    | <b>Cominciáre</b> , begin.  |
| <b>Calzóni</b> , trousers.                               | <b>Comméttere</b> , commit.   |
| <b>Can</b> , <i>see</i> <b>Cáne</b> .                    | <b>Compáño</b> , companion.   |
| <b>Cáne</b> , dog.                                       | <b>Comúne</b> , town. <i>Comúni</i> = commons.                      |
| <b>Capáce</b> , capable.                                 | <b>Con</b> , with.  |
| <b>Cápo</b> , head. <i>Da cápo, daccápo</i> = once more. | <b>Confétti</b> , candy.  |
| <b>Cappéllo</b> , hat.                                   | <b>Conóscere</b> , know, find out.                                  |
| <b>Carlomagno</b> , Charlemagne.                         | <b>Cónte</b> , count.   |
| <b>Cárne</b> , flesh.                                    | <b>Continovaménte</b> , continually.                                |
| <b>Cása</b> , house, home.                               | <b>Contínuo</b> , continual.  |
| <b>Cascáre</b> , fall.                                   | <b>Cónto</b> , count.   |
| <b>Cassétta</b> , drawer.                                | <b>Córpo</b> , body.  |
| <b>Cassettóne</b> , bureau.                              | <b>Corrèggersi</b> , reform.  |
| <b>Castéllo</b> , castle.                                | <b>Cósa</b> , thing. <i>Cósa públlica</i> = government.             |
| <b>Cattívo</b> , bad, naughty.                           | <b>Così</b> , so, thus.   |
| <b>Cèlia</b> , trick.                                    | <b>Creatúra</b> , creature.   |
| <b>Cènto</b> , a hundred.                                | <b>Crédere</b> , believe.   |
| <b>Cercáre</b> , search.                                 | <b>Cúí</b> , whom, whose.   |
| <b>Cèrto</b> , certain, some.                            | <b>Curiosità</b> , curiosity.                                       |
| <b>Cespúglio</b> , bush.                                 | <b>Curioso</b> , curious, funny.                                    |
| <b>Che</b> , who, which, that.                           | <b>Da</b> , by, from, as to. <i>Dalle parti</i> = at the sides.     |
| <b>Che</b> , what. <i>Che cosa</i> = what.               | <b>Daccápo</b> , <i>see</i> <b>Cápo</b> .                           |
| <b>Che</b> , that.                                       | <b>Dái</b> , <i>dal, etc.</i> = <i>da</i> + <i>art.</i>             |
| <b>Che</b> , than.                                       | <b>Dáre</b> , give, look.   |
| <b>Chi . . . chi</b> , one . . . another.                | <b>De'</b> , <i>dégli, déi, del, etc.</i> = <i>di</i> + <i>art.</i> |
| <b>Chiamáre</b> , call.                                  | <b>Desidèrio</b> , desire.  |
| <b>Chícoa</b> , sweetmeat.                               | <b>Détto</b> , said, told.  |
| <b>Ci</b> , there.                                       | <b>Di</b> , of, than, to, with.                                     |
| <b>Cínque</b> , five.                                    |   |

- Dicêrto**, surely.  
**Di diêtro**, from behind.  
**Diêci**, ten.  
**Diêtro**, behind, after. *Di dittro* = from behind. *Dittro a* = after.  
**Dintórni**, neighborhood.  
**Dîo**, God.  
**Dîre**, say, speak.  
**Dirîtto**, right.  
**Discórso**, talk.  
**Disobbediênte**, disobedient.  
**Disperáto**, desperate.  
**Distánza**, distance.  
**Distrúggere**, destroy.  
**Disubbidîênte**, disobedient.  
**Ditîno**, from Dîto.  
**Dîto**, finger. *Dîto grôssô* = thumb.  
**Diventáre**, become.  
**Dódict**, twelve.  
**Dolóre**, pain.  
**Dópo**, after.  
**Dóve**, where.  
**Dovére**, ought, must.  
**Dúe**, two.  
**Dúnque**, therefore.  
**Duránte**, during.  
**E**, and.  
**Ècco**, this is.  
**Ed**, and.  
**Enríco**, Henry.  
**Èssa**, it.  
**Èsse**, them.  
**Èssere**, be. *Èssere per* = be about to.  
**Èssi**, them.  
**Èsso**, it.  
**Fállo**, fault.  
**Fanciúlio**, child.  
**Fáre**, make, let.  
**Farfállà**, butterfly.  
**Fasciáre**, bandage.  
**Férro**, iron.  
**Figliuôlo**, child, son.  
**Figurársi**, imagine.  
**Finchè non**, until.  
**Finêstra**, window.  
**Finîre**, finish.  
**Fîno a**, up to.  
**Fióre**, flower.  
**Fiorîto**, flowery.  
**Fiôrênze**, Florence.  
**Firmamênto**, firmament.  
**Fôglia**, leaf.  
**Fónte**, fountain.  
**Forestiêro**, foreign.  
**Fra**, between, in, to.  
**Frédido**, cold.  
**Frónte**, forehead.  
**Frútto**, fruit.  
**Fuggîre**, flee.  
**Fuôri**, out.  
**Fúria**, haste.  
**Gámba**, leg.  
**Gámbo**, stem.  
**Gátto**, cat.  
**Genitóri**, parents.  
**Già**, already.  
**Giardîno**, garden.  
**Gíglia**, lily.  
**Giorgétto**, Georgie.  
**Giórno**, day.  
**Girár**, see *Giráre*.  
**Giráre**, go around.  
**Giráto**, gone around.  
**Gíro**, turn, circuit.  
**Gíro gíro a**, round and round.



|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Giù</b> , down.                                  | <b>Là</b> , there. <i>Di là</i> = there.  |
| <b>Giudizio</b> , judgment, idea.                   | <b>Laceráre</b> , tear.   |
| <b>Gli</b> , the.                                   | <b>Ládra</b> , thief.   |
| <b>Gli</b> , it.                                    | <b>Ládro</b> , robber.  |
| <b>Gli</b> , to him.                                | <b>Lámpo</b> , flash.   |
| <b>Glie</b> , <i>see Gli</i> , <b>Le</b> .          | <b>Lancétta</b> , hand.   |
| <b>Glóbo</b> , globe.                               | <b>Lasciáre</b> , leave, let, let go.   |
| <b>Goloso</b> , glutton, greedy.                    | <b>Lasciáto</b> , let.  |
| <b>Governáto</b> , governed.                        | <b>Lavoráre</b> , work.   |
| <b>Gránde</b> , big.                                | <b>Le</b> , the.  |
| <b>Grandíssimo</b> , very big.                      | <b>Le</b> , to her, to it.  |
| <b>Grído</b> , shout.                               | <b>Le</b> , them.   |
| <b>Gróss</b> , big.                                 | <b>Leóne</b> , lion.  |
| <b>Guardársi</b> , refrain.                         | <b>Lésto</b> , quick.   |
| <b>I</b> , the.                                     | <b>Leváre</b> , take away. <i>Lévdrsi</i> ( <i>with direct object</i> ) = get rid of. |
| <b>Il</b> , the.                                    | <b>Leváto</b> , up.   |
| <b>Illumináto</b> , illumined.                      | <b>Li</b> , them.   |
| <b>Il quále</b> , who.                              | <b>Li</b> , there.  |
| <b>Imperatóre</b> , emperor.                        | <b>Líbero</b> , free.   |
| <b>Impéro</b> , empire.                             | <b>Lo</b> , the.  |
| <b>In</b> , in.                                     | <b>Lo</b> , him, it.  |
| <b>Infátti</b> , in fact.                           | <b>Longobárdo</b> , Longobard.  |
| <b>Infinitaménte</b> , infinitely.                  | <b>Lontáno</b> , distant.   |
| <b>Infíno</b> , even.                               | <b>Lóro</b> , them, their.  |
| <b>Infocáto</b> , blazing.                          | <b>Lúce</b> , light.  |
| <b>Ingordíglia</b> , gluttony.                      | <b>Lucértola</b> , lizard.  |
| <b>Insegnáre</b> , teach.                           | <b>Lúí</b> , him, he.   |
| <b>Insétto</b> , insect.                            | <b>Lúme</b> , light.  |
| <b>Insiéme</b> , together.                          | <b>Luminóso</b> , luminous.   |
| <b>Insómma</b> , in short.                          | <b>Lúna</b> , moon.   |
| <b>Intendiménto</b> , intelligence.                 | <b>Ma</b> , but.  |
| <b>Intórno</b> , around ( <i>adv.</i> ).            | <b>Mádre</b> , mother.  |
| <b>Intórno a</b> , around ( <i>prep.</i> ).         | <b>Maestóso</b> , majestic.   |
| <b>Invasióne</b> , invasion.                        | <b>Maèstra</b> , school-mistress.   |
| <b>Inspiráre</b> , inspire.                         | <b>Maèstro</b> , school-master.   |
| <b>L'</b> , <i>see La</i> , <b>Le</b> , <b>Lo</b> . | <b>Mággio</b> , May.  |
| <b>La</b> , the.                                    | <b>Maggióre</b> , larger.   |
| <b>La</b> , it, hér.                                |   |

- Mái**, ever. *Non mai* = never.  
**Malánno**, harm. *Far malánni*  
 = mischief-making.  
**Maláta**, ill.  
**Maldicónte**, gossip.  
**Mále**, badly, ill.  
**Mále**, wicked.  
**Mámma**, mother, *mamma*.  
**Mandáre**, send.  
**Mangiáre**, eat.  
**Maniéra**, manner.  
**Máno**, hand.  
**Mattína**, morning.  
**Méno**, less.  
**Ménto**, chin.  
**Méntre**, while.  
**Meraviglióso**, wonderful.  
**Metà**, half.  
**Méttere**, put. *Mittersi* = begin,  
 put on.  
**Mèzzo**, half.  
**Mèzzo**, middle. *In mèzzo a* = in  
 the middle of.  
**Milióne**, million.  
**Minacciáre**, threaten.  
**Minóre**, smaller.  
**Minúto**, minute.  
**Mío**, my.  
**Módo**, way.  
**Molestáre**, annoy.  
**Mólti**, many.  
**Mólto**, much.  
**Mórdere**, bite.  
**Mósca**, fly.  
**Móstra**, face.  
**Múcio**, puss, cat.  
**Múro**, wall.  
**Mutáre**, change.  
**Nascósto**, hidden.  
**Náso**, nose.  
**Náto**, born.  
**Ne**, of it, for it.  
**Nè**, nor.  
**Nái**, *nel*, etc. = in + art.  
**Nemméno**, even.  
**Nessúno**, nobody.  
**Niccolíno**, Nicholas, Nick.  
**Nído**, nest.  
**No**, no. *Di no* = no.  
**Nóbile**, noble.  
**Nobiltà**, nobility.  
**Nói**, we, us.  
**Nôia**, trouble.  
**Non**, not. *Non . . . che* = only.  
**Nôstro**, our.  
**Nótte**, night.  
**Nôve**, nine.  
**Núlla**, nothing.  
**Número**, number.  
**O**, or.  
**O**, oh.  
**Ôocchio**, eye.  
**Occhióne**, from **Ôocchio**.  
**Odóre**, odor.  
**Ógni**, every.  
**Ognúno**, everybody.  
**Óltre**, beyond, over.  
**Óra**, now.  
**Óra**, hour.  
**Oramái**, at last.  
**Origine**, origin.  
**Ôro**, gold.  
**Orológio**, watch.  
**Ôtto**, eight.  
**Padroncino**, little master.  
**Palázso**, palace.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Panière</b> , basket.  | <b>Prêso</b> , near.                               |
| <b>Panierino</b> , from <b>Panière</b> .  | <b>Prêsto</b> , early.                             |
| <b>Pànni</b> , clothes.   | <b>Pretêndere</b> , expect.                        |
| <b>Parécchio</b> , some.  | <b>Prevalére</b> , prevail.                        |
| <b>Parére</b> , seem.   | <b>Prîmo</b> , first.                              |
| <b>Pàrte</b> , part, side. <i>Dalle pàrti</i> =<br>at the sides. <i>A quèsta pàrte</i> =<br>to this time. | <b>Prònto</b> , quick.                             |
| <b>Participàre</b> , participate.   | <b>Público</b> , public.                           |
| <b>Pàsso</b> , step.  | <b>Punîre</b> , punish.                            |
| <b>Pàtto</b> , condition. <i>A pàtto che</i> =<br>on condition that.                                      | <b>Púnto</b> , point.                              |
| <b>Pel</b> = per il.  | <b>Quadrúpede</b> , quadruped.                     |
| <b>Pensàre</b> , think.   | <b>Qualche</b> , some.                             |
| <b>Per</b> , for, in order to, on account<br>of, through, by.   | <b>Qualchedúno</b> , somebody.                     |
| <b>Perchè</b> , why, because.   | <b>Qualcosa</b> , anything.                        |
| <b>Pêrdere</b> , lose.  | <b>Qualcúno</b> , somebody.                        |
| <b>Perdonàre</b> , pardon.  | <b>Quàle</b> , see <b>Il quale</b> .               |
| <b>Permesso</b> , permission.   | <b>Quándo</b> , when.                              |
| <b>Però</b> , therefore, however.   | <b>Quánto</b> , as much.                           |
| <b>Pésce</b> , fish.  | <b>Quattórdici</b> , fourteen.                     |
| <b>Pétto</b> , chest.   | <b>Quáttro</b> , four.                             |
| <b>Piánta</b> , plant.  | <b>Que'</b> , <i>quéi</i> , <i>pl. of Quéllo</i> . |
| <b>Picchiàre</b> , strike.  | <b>Quégli</b> , <i>pl. of Quéllo</i> .             |
| <b>Picóino</b> , tiny, small.   | <b>Quel</b> , see <b>Quéllo</b> .                  |
| <b>Píccolo</b> , little, small.   | <b>Quéllo</b> , that.                              |
| <b>Piêde</b> , foot.  | <b>Quêsto</b> , this.                              |
| <b>Piêno</b> , full.  | <b>Qui</b> , here. <i>Di qui</i> = here.           |
| <b>Pigliàre</b> , take.   | <b>Quíndi</b> , therefore.                         |
| <b>Pínna</b> , fin.   | <b>Raccontàre</b> , relate.                        |
| <b>Più</b> , more, most.  | <b>Raggiúngere</b> , overtake.                     |
| <b>Po'</b> , little.  | <b>Raglône</b> , reason.                           |
| <b>Pòi</b> , then, too.   | <b>Rasênte</b> , close.                            |
| <b>Portàre</b> , take, bring.   | <b>Recreazióne</b> , recess.                       |
| <b>Potére</b> , can, be able.   | <b>Refezióne</b> , lunch.                          |
| <b>Póvero</b> , poor.   | <b>Rêggere</b> , stand, endure.                    |
| <b>Prêndere</b> , take.   | <b>Respiràre</b> , breathe.                        |
|   | <b>Réttile</b> , reptile.                          |
|   | <b>Ricárdo</b> , Richard.                          |
|   | <b>Ricominciàre</b> , begin again.                 |
|   | <b>Ricordàrsi</b> , remember.                      |

**Ridere**, laugh.

**Riga**, line. *Di prima riga* = first-class.

**Righettina**, little mark.

**Rimandare**, send back.

**Rimanere**, remain.

**Rimediare** a, atone for.

**Rimproverare**, reprove.

**Ripetere**, repeat.

**Riposo**, rest.

**Rispondere**, reply.

**Risputare**, spit again.

**Rompere**, break.

**Rosa**, rose.

**Rotondo**, round.

**Rubare**, steal.

**Sanguinoso**, bloody.

**Sapere**, know, hear.

**Soporaccio**, *from Sapore*.

**Sapore**, taste.

**Sasso**, stone.

**Scappare**, run away.

**Scena**, scene.

**Scender**, *see Scendere*.

**Scendere**, descend.

**Scuola**, school.

**Se**, if, whether.

**Se**, *see Si*.

**Sè**, itself, himself, herself.

**Secondo che**, according as.

**Segnato**, marked.

**Seguire**, turn out.

**Sèi**, six.

**Sempre**, always.

**Senese**, Sienese.

**Sentire**, taste, hear.

**Senza**, without.

**Serpe**, snake.

**Servitore**, servant.

**Sessanta**, sixty.

**Sette**, seven.

**Sfacciataggine**, impudence.

**Si**, himself, herself, itself.

**Sì**, yes, so.

**Signora**, lady.

**Signore**, gentleman.

**Signoria**, rule.

**Simile**, like.

**Smisurato**, boundless.

**Soave**, sweet.

**Solamente**, only.

**Sole**, sun.

**Sollécito**, early, brisk.

**Solo**, alone.

**Sommato**, added.

**Sopra**, on, above. *Di sopra* = up, above.

**Sorella**, sister.

**Sorellina**, *from Sorella*.

**Sorte**, lucky.

**Sospettare**, suspect.

**Sospetto**, suspicion.

**Sostegno**, support.

**Sotto**, under. *Di sotto* = down, underneath.

**Sparire**, disappear.

**Spicchio**, slice.

**Spina**, thorn.

**Sputare**, spit.

**Stanza**, room.

**Stare**, stay, stand.

**Stella**, star.

**Stesso**, himself.

**Stesso**, same.

**Stesso**, even.

**Stracciare**, tear.

- Strétto**, close, tight.  
**Strilláre**, scream.  
**Su**, on, up.  
**Su'**, *sul, etc.* = *su* + *art.*  
**Súbito**, at once.  
**Súo**, its, his, her.  
**Tángo**, so much, so, much.  
**Tángo . . . quáto**, both . . . and.  
**Te**, thee, you.  
**Témpo**, time.  
**Tenúto**, held.  
**Térra**, earth, ground, land.  
**Território**, territory.  
**Ti**, thee, you.  
**Tiráre**, throw, draw. *Tídr fubri*, take out.  
**Tócco**, one o'clock.  
**Tornáre**, return, returning.  
**Tórno tórno a**, round and round.  
**Toscáno**, Tuscan.  
**Tra**, among, to.  
**Tranquillaménte**, tranquilly.  
**Trátto**: *a un trátto* = all at once.  
**Traversáre**, cross.  
**Tre**, three.  
**Trédici**, thirteen.  
**Trónco**, trunk.  
**Trováre**, find.  
**Tu**, thou, you.  
**Túo**, thy, your.  
**Tútto**, all. *Per tútto* = everywhere. *Tútti e due* = both; *tútti e tre* = all three; *etc.*  
**Uccellíno**, *from Uccello*.  
**Uccéllo**, bird.  
**Un**, a, one.
- Úna**, a, one.  
**Úndici**, eleven.  
**Úno**, a, one.  
**Uòvo**, egg.  
**Urláre**, yell.  
**Úscio**, door.  
**Vassoíno**, tray.  
**Vedére**, see.  
**Ventiquáttro**, twenty-four.  
**Verità**, truth.  
**Véro**, true.  
**Véscovo**, bishop.  
**Vésa**, wasp.  
**Vestíre**, dress.  
**Via**, off, away, so forth. *Sometimes used instead of a verb of motion.*  
**Viággio**, way, journey.  
**Vicíno**, near.  
**Vióla**, violet.  
**Vióttola**, path.  
**Viso**, face.  
**Vísio**, lively.  
**Viziáccio**, *from Vizio*.  
**Vizio**, vice.  
**Vóce**, voice.  
**Vòglia**, desire.  
**Volére**, wish.  
**Volontariaménte**, voluntarily.  
**Vólta**, time.  
**Voltár**, *see Voltáre*.  
**Voltáre**, turn.  
**Zámpa**, paw, foot.  
**Zampína**, little paw.  
**Zanzára**, mosquito.  
**Zimbéllo**, laughing-stock.

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY.

- A**, un, úno, úna.  
**Africa**, Áffrica.  
**After**, dópo.  
**Ago**, fa.  
**Aim**, miráre.  
**Air**, ária.  
**All**, tútto.  
**Alone**, sólo.  
**Although**, sebbène.  
**Always**, sêmpre.  
**Amaze**, meravigliáre.  
**America**, Amériça.  
**An**, *see* **A**.  
**Ancient**, antíco.  
**And**, e.  
**Another**, un áltro.  
**April**, apríle, *m*.  
**Around**, intórno.  
**As**, cóme.  
**As . . . as**, quánto, tánto . . . cóme.  
**Asia**, Ásia.  
**At**, a.  
**Attach**, attaccáre.  
**August**, agósto.  
**Be**, éssere, *irreg.* (**53**, *a*).  
**Beam**, tráve, *m. or f.*  
**Beast**, béstia.  
**Beautiful**, béllo.  
**Because**, perchè.  
**Begin**, cominciáre.  
**Believe**, crédere.  
**Big**, gróssó.  
**Bird**, uccéllo.  
**Black**, néro.  
**Blood**, sángue, *m*.  
**Boil**, bollíre.  
**Born**, náto. *Pl.* : náti, *m.* ; náte, *f*.  
**Boy**, ragázze.  
**Branch**, rámo.  
**Bread**, páne, *m*.  
**Brother**, fratéllo, *m*.  
**Bubble**, vescichétta.  
**But**, ma.  
**By**, da. *By chance* = per cáso.  
**Call**, chiamáre.  
**Capital**, capitále, *f*.  
**Car**, vagóne, *m*.  
**Care**, cúra.  
**Carriage**, carròzza.  
**Carry**, portáre.  
**Case**, cáso.  
**Ceiling**, pálco.  
**Chance**, cáso. *By chance* = per cáso.  
**Charged**, cárico.  
**Charity**, carità, *f*.  
**Charles**, Cárlo.  
**Choose**, scégliere, *irreg.*  
**Christopher**, Cristóforo.  
**Circle**, tóndo.  
**City**, città, *f*.  
**Cloud**, núvola.  
**Club**, bastóne, *m*.  
**Coat**, ábito.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Collect</b> , raccôgliere, <i>irreg.</i>                             | <b>Emmanuel</b> , Emmanuêle.                                  |
| <b>Columbus</b> , Colômbô.  | <b>Emperor</b> , imperatôre, <i>m.</i>                        |
| <b>Come back</b> , tornâre.   | <b>Empty</b> , vuôto.   |
| <b>Companion</b> , compâgno.  | <b>End</b> , terminâre.                                       |
| <b>Confined</b> , tenûto.   | <b>Enemy</b> , nemîco.  |
| <b>Construct</b> , costruîre, <i>irreg.</i>                             | <b>Escape</b> , scappâre.                                     |
| <b>Continue</b> , seguitâre.  | <b>Europe</b> , Eurôpa.                                       |
| <b>Contrary</b> , contrârio.  | <b>Even</b> , ânce.   |
| <b>Cool</b> , raffreddârsi.   | <b>Ever</b> , mâi.  |
| <b>Corner</b> , cânto.  | <b>Every</b> , ôgni.  |
| <b>Country</b> , paése, <i>m.</i>                                       | <b>Everything</b> , tûtto.                                    |
| <b>Cover</b> , coprîre, <i>irreg.</i>                                   | <b>Everywhere</b> , per tûtto.                                |
| <b>Creature</b> , animâle, <i>m.</i>                                    | <b>Eye</b> , <i>noun</i> , ôcchio.                            |
| <b>Crumb</b> , brîciola.  | <b>Eye</b> , <i>vb.</i> , occhiâre.                           |
| <b>Crush</b> , schiacciâre.   | <b>Fall</b> , cadûta.   |
| <b>Dark</b> , búio.   | <b>Family</b> , famîglia, <i>f.</i>                           |
| <b>Day</b> , giòrno.  | <b>Far</b> , lontâno.   |
| <b>December</b> , dicêmbre, <i>m.</i>                                   | <b>Father</b> , pâdre, <i>m.</i> , bábbo.                     |
| <b>Dense</b> , dênsô.   | <b>February</b> , febbraio.                                   |
| <b>Department</b> , dipartimêto.  | <b>Fief</b> , fêudo.  |
| <b>Discover</b> , scoprîre, <i>irreg.</i>                               | <b>Fifth</b> , quînto.  |
| <b>Distance</b> , distânza.   | <b>Find</b> , trovâre.  |
| <b>Divide</b> , dividere, <i>irreg.</i>                                 | <b>Finger</b> , dîto. <i>Pl. dîta, f.</i>                     |
| <b>Do</b> , fâre, <i>irreg.</i>   | <b>Fire</b> , fuôco.  |
| <b>Dominion</b> , domínio.  | <b>First</b> , prîmo.   |
| <b>Door</b> , úscio.  | <b>Five</b> , cínque.   |
| <b>Down</b> , giù.  | <b>Fiat</b> , piâtto.   |
| <b>Dream</b> , sognâre.   | <b>Flee</b> , fuggîre.  |
| <b>Drop</b> , gócciola. <i>Drop by drop</i> =<br>a gócciola a gócciola. | <b>Flower</b> , fiôre, <i>m.</i>                              |
| <b>Duke</b> , dúca, <i>m.</i>   | <b>Fly</b> , volâre.  |
| <b>Dungeon</b> , cárcere, <i>f.</i>                                     | <b>Food</b> , mangiâre, <i>m.</i>                             |
| <b>Dust</b> , pólvore, <i>f.</i>  | <b>For</b> , per. <i>For yourself (conjunctive)</i> = vi, si. |
| <b>Earn</b> , guadagnâre.   | <b>Form</b> , formâre.  |
| <b>Earth</b> , târra.   | <b>Fort</b> , fortézza.                                       |
| <b>Eight hundred</b> , ottocênto.                                       | <b>Forth</b> , fuôri.   |
| <b>Eighty</b> , ottánta.  | <b>Forty</b> , quaránta.                                      |
| <b>Either . . . or</b> , o . . . o.                                     | <b>Four</b> , quâttro.  |

- Four hundred**, quattrocênto.  
**France**, Frâncîa, *f*.  
**Friday**, venerdì, *m*.  
**Friend**, amîco, *m*.  
**From**, da.  
**Fruit**, frûtto.  
**Furniture**, mobîlia.  
**Genoa**, Gênova.  
**Give**, dâre, *irreg.*  
**Go**, andâre, *irreg.*  
**Good**, buôno.  
**Grain**, grâno.  
**Great**, grânde.  
**Ground**, têrra.  
**Grove**, boschétto.  
**Grow up**, venîr su, *irreg.*  
**Gun**, schiôppo, fucile, *m*.  
**Hand**, mâno, *f*.  
**Happen**, accadére, *irreg.*  
**Hardly**, appéna.  
**Hasten**, affrettârsi.  
**Hate**, odiâre.  
**Have**, avére, *irreg.* (53, b).  
**He**, égli, lui.  
**Heat**, cálido.  
**Her**, la, le, lêi.  
**Herb**, êrba.  
**Here**, qua.  
**High**, âlto.  
**Him**, lo, gli, lui. *To him* = gli, a lui.  
**Himself**, si.  
**His**, súo.  
**History**, stôria.  
**Holiday**, fêsta.  
**Honest**, onêsto.  
**However**, tuttavía.  
**Hunter**, cacciátore, *m*.  
**I**, io.  
**If**, se.  
**Imagine**, immagináre.  
**In**, in.  
**Indeed**, davvéro.  
**Inhabit**, abitâre.  
**Inside**, didêntro.  
**Instance**, esêmpio.  
**Intense**, vívo.  
**Intention**, intenzióne, *f*.  
**Into**, in.  
**It**, lo, la, égli, gli.  
**Italian**, italiáno.  
**Italy**, Itália, *f*.  
**Its**, súo, súa.  
**Itself**, si.  
**Jailor**, carceriére, *m*.  
**January**, gennáio.  
**July**, lúglio.  
**June**, giúgno.  
**King**, re, *m*.  
**Know**, sapére, *irreg.*, conóscere (= *be acquainted with*), *irreg.*  
**Land**, paése, *m.*, têrra.  
**Large**, grânde.  
**Last**, último. *Last year* = l'ânno scórso.  
**Latter**, quêsto. *The latter* = quêsti, *m. sing.*  
**Leaf**, fôglia.  
**Leap-year**, bisestile, *m*.  
**Learn**, imparâre.  
**Left**, sinístra.  
**Lid**, têsto.  
**Lift**, sollevâre.  
**Light**, lúce, *f*.  
**Like**, cóme.  
**Little** (= *small*), piccòlo, piccîno.



**Little** (= *a small quantity*), *pôco*.

*Little by little* = *a pôco a pôco*.

**Live**, *vivere*, *irreg.*

**Loaded**, *cárico*.

**Lorraine** : *of Lorraine* = *lorenése*.

**Loud**, *fôrte*.

**Low**, *básso*.

**Lower**, *abbassáre*.

**Man**, *uômo*, *pl.* *uômini*.

**Many**, *mólti*, *m.*, *mólte*, *f.*

**March**, *márzo*.

**Mask**, *máschera*.

**May**, *mággio*.

**Me**, *mi*, *me*.

**Melon**, *cocômero*.

**Merchant**, *mercánte*, *m.*

**Middle**, *mêzzo*.

**Mignonette**, *amoríno*.

**Mine**, *mío*.

**Moisture**, *umidità*, *f.*

**Monday**, *lunedì*, *m.*

**Month**, *mése*, *m.*

**Moon**, *lúna*.

**More**, *più*.

**Mortify**, *mortificáre*.

**Most**, *il più*.

**Mr.**, *signór*.

**My**, *mío*.

**Name**, *nóme*, *m.*

**Napoleon**, *Napoleóne*.

**Near**, *vicíno a*.

**Need**, *bisógno*.

**Never**, *non . . . mái*.

**Nice**, *gentíle*.

**Ninety**, *novánta*.

**No**, *no*.

**Nobody**, *nessúno*.

**Nor**, *nè*.

**Not**, *non*.

**November**, *novémbre*.

**Now**, *óra*.

**Object**, *oggétto*.

**Observe**, *osserváre*.

**Oceanica**, *Oceánia*.

**October**, *ottóbre*.

**Of**, *di*. *Of them* = *ne*.

**On**, *sópra*, *su*.

**One**, *úno*.

**One's self**, *si*.

**Only**, *sólo (adj.)*, *non . . . che (adv.)*.

**Opposite**, *oppósto*.

**Or**, *o*.

**Other**, *áltro*.

**Ought**, *dovére*, *irreg.*

**Out**, *fuôri*.

**Outside**, *difuôri*, *m.*

**Over there**, *laggiù*.

**Pace**, *pásso*.

**Parents**, *genitóri*, *m. pl.*

**Paris**, *Parígi*.

**Parrot**, *pappagállo*.

**Part**, *párte*, *f.*

**Peasant**, *contadíno*.

**Perfectly**, *prôprio*.

**Perhaps**, *fôrse*.

**Persuade**, *persuacére*, *irreg.*

**Philip**, *Filíppo*.

**Place**, *luôgo*.

**Placed**, *pósto*.

**Plainly**, *schiettaménte*.

**Plant**, *piánta*.

**Point**, *púnto*.

**Poor**, *pôvero*.

**Pot**, *péntola*.

**Present**, *presentáre*.

- Prevent**, impedire.  
**Principle**, principio.  
**Prison**, prigióne, *f.*  
**Prisoner**, prigioniero.  
**Profession**, professione, *f.*  
**Purpose**, úso.  
**Quantity**, quantità, *f.*  
**Question**, domanda.  
**Rain**, pioggia.  
**Raise**, levare.  
**Rare**, raro.  
**Recognized**, conosciuto.  
**Relate**, raccontare.  
**Remain**, rimanere, *irreg.*, restare.  
**Repeat**, ripetere.  
**Reply**, rispondere, *irreg.*  
**Resolve**, risolvere, *irreg.*  
**Rest**, posare.  
**Right**, destra.  
**Rise**, salire, *irreg.*  
**Room**, stanza.  
**Root**, radice, *f.*  
**Round**, rotondo.  
**Rule**, signoria.  
**Sacrifice**, sacrificio.  
**Sail**, navigare.  
**Sailor**, marinaio.  
**Same**, stesso.  
**Satisfy**, contentare.  
**Saturday**, sabato.  
**Say**, dire, *irreg.*  
**Sea**, mare, *m.*  
**Second**, secondo.  
**See**, vedere, *irreg.*  
**Seed**, seme, *m.*  
**Sent**, mandato.  
**September**, settembre, *m.*  
**Service**, servizio.  
**Seven**, sette.  
**Shake**, scuotere, *irreg.*  
**Ship**, nave, *f.*  
**Shoot**, bába.  
**Short**, corto.  
**Show off**, far vedere, *irreg.*  
**Side**, parte, *f.*  
**Silence**, silenzio.  
**Sinister**, sinistro.  
**Sir**, signóre, *m.*  
**Sixty**, sessánta.  
**Sky**, ciélo.  
**Small**, piccolo, piccino.  
**Smoke**, fúmo.  
**So**, così.  
**So as to**, per.  
**Some**, qualche.  
**Somebody else**, qualchedun' ál-  
tro.  
**Sometimes**, qualchevolta.  
**So much**, tanto.  
**Son**, figlio.  
**Sort**, sorta.  
**Spaniard**, spagnuolo.  
**Speak**, parlare.  
**Spider**, rágno, rágnolo.  
**Sprouted**, germogliato.  
**Stalk**, fústo.  
**Star**, stélla.  
**Steam**, vapore, *m.*  
**Straight**, diríto.  
**Study**, *noun*, stúdio.  
**Study**, *vb.*, studiáre.  
**Sun**, sóle, *m.*  
**Sunday**, doménica.  
**Support**, mantenere, *irreg.*  
**Surprised**, sorpreso.  
**Surround**, circondare.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Table</b> , távola.   | <b>Tuscan</b> , toscáno.                             |
| <b>Take</b> , prèndere, <i>irreg.</i>                                  | <b>Twelve</b> , dódice.                              |
| <b>Tear</b> , raschiàre.   | <b>Twenty-eight</b> , ventòtto.                      |
| <b>Than</b> , che, di.   | <b>Twenty-nine</b> , ventinòve.                      |
| <b>Thanks</b> , grázie, <i>f. pl.</i>                                  | <b>Twig</b> , ramoscéllò.                            |
| <b>That</b> , <i>conj.</i> , che.                                      | <b>Two</b> , dúe.                                    |
| <b>That</b> , <i>rel. pron.</i> , che.                                 | <b>Under</b> , sótto.                                |
| <b>That</b> , <i>demons. pron.</i> , quéllo.                           | <b>Unfortunate</b> , infelíce.                       |
| <b>The</b> , il, lo, la, i, gli, le.                                   | <b>Unhappy</b> , sventuráto.                         |
| <b>Them</b> , li, le, lóro. <i>Of them</i> = ne.                       | <b>Union</b> , unióne, <i>f.</i>                     |
| <b>Then</b> , pòi.   | <b>Unite</b> , raccògliere, <i>irreg.</i>            |
| <b>There</b> , là, lì.   | <b>Until</b> , <i>prep.</i> , fino a.                |
| <b>Therefore</b> , però.   | <b>Until</b> , <i>conj.</i> , finchè . . . non.      |
| <b>They</b> , éssi, ésse, lóro.  | <b>Us</b> , nói, ci ( <i>conjunctive</i> ).          |
| <b>Thick</b> , gròsso.   | <b>Usual</b> , usáto.                                |
| <b>Thing</b> , còsa.   | <b>Vapor</b> , vapóre, <i>m.</i>                     |
| <b>Think</b> , pensàre.  | <b>Vegetable</b> , vegetábile, <i>m.</i>             |
| <b>Third</b> , tèrzo.  | <b>Very</b> , mólto, tánto.                          |
| <b>Thirtieth</b> , trentésimo.   | <b>Victor</b> , Vittòrio.                            |
| <b>Thirty</b> , trénta.  | <b>Villa</b> , vílla.                                |
| <b>Thirty-first</b> , trentésimo prímo.                                | <b>Village</b> , villággio.                          |
| <b>Thirty-one</b> , trentúnò, trentún.                                 | <b>Water</b> , ácqua.                                |
| <b>This</b> , quésto.  | <b>Way</b> (= <i>manner</i> ), manierà.              |
| <b>Thousand</b> , mílle.   | <b>We</b> , nói.                                     |
| <b>Three</b> , tre.  | <b>Web</b> , téla.                                   |
| <b>Three hundred</b> , trecénto.                                       | <b>Wednesday</b> , mercoledì, <i>m.</i>              |
| <b>Thursday</b> , giovedì, <i>m.</i>                                   | <b>Week</b> , settimána.                             |
| <b>Thus</b> , cosí.  | <b>What</b> , <i>interrog. and exclam.</i> ,<br>che. |
| <b>Time</b> , vólta, tèmpo. <i>Another time</i> :<br><i>use vólta.</i> | <b>What</b> , <i>rel.</i> , quéllo che.              |
| <b>To</b> , a. <i>To him</i> = gli.                                    | <b>When</b> , quándò.                                |
| <b>Together</b> , insième.   | <b>Where</b> , dóve.                                 |
| <b>Too</b> (= <i>also</i> ), ánche.                                    | <b>Which</b> , che.                                  |
| <b>Too</b> (= <i>excessively</i> ), tróppo.                            | <b>While</b> , méntre.                               |
| <b>Tree</b> , álbero.  | <b>Who</b> , <i>rel.</i> , che.                      |
| <b>Trunk</b> , trónco.   | <b>Whom</b> , <i>rel.</i> , cùi.                     |
| <b>Tuesday</b> , martedì, <i>m.</i>                                    | <b>Willingly</b> , volentiéri.                       |
| <b>Turn</b> , giráre.  | <b>Wind</b> , vènto.                                 |

**Window**, finêstra.

**With**, con.

**Without**, sênza.

**Wood**, bôscò.

**Word**, parôla.

**Working-day**, giòrno di lavóro.

**World**, móndo.

**Year**, áнно.

**Yes**, già.

**You**, vói, vi, Lèi, la, le. *To you*  
= vi, le.

**Your**, vôstro, Súo.

**Yourself**, vi, si. *For yourself* =  
vi, si.



## INDEX.

[The numbers refer to paragraphs.]

- A** (letter): 2.  
**A** (preposition): 79; 79, *b*, *k*.  
**Accents**: 3; 7.  
**Address** (Forms of): 52.  
**Adjectives**: 26-34.  
    Comparison: 31-34.  
    Gender: 26; 28.  
    Number: 26; 29.  
    Position: 27.  
    Used as nouns: 30.  
**Adverbs**: 80-85.  
    *Ci, vi*: 47, *a*; 48, *e*; 49, *a*; 84.  
    Comparison: 80, 2.  
    Manner: 85.  
    *So*: 85, *a*.  
    *Ne*: 47, *a*; 48, *e*; 49, *a*; 56, *b*, 2.  
    *Never*: 83.  
    *Not, non*: 80, 1; 81; 91, *a*.  
    *Only*: 82.  
    Position: 80, 1.  
**All**: 87.  
**Alphabet**: 1.  
**Altrui**: 91, *d*.  
**Any**: 88.  
**Articles**: 9-16.  
    Definite: 10-13.  
    Indefinite: 14-16.  
**Augmentatives**: 35-37.  
**Auxiliary Verbs**: 53-57.  
    *Avere*: 53, *b*; 54, 3.  
    *Essere*: 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3.  
    Compound tenses: 54; 55-56.  
    Modal auxiliaries: 57.  
**Avere**: 53, *b*; 54, 3; 54, *b*.  
**Be**: 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3; 54, *a*, *d*, *f*.  
**Bello**: 29, *c*.  
**Both**: 38, 4; 91.  
**Buono**: 29, *c*.  
**Can**: see **Modal Auxiliaries**.  
**Ci** (adv.): 47, *a*; 48, *e*; 49, *a*; 84.  
**Ci** (pron.): 47-50; 56, *b*.  
**Close vowels**: 3.  
**Comparison**: 31-34; 80, 2.  
    Adjectives: 31-34.  
    Adverbs: 80, 2.  
    Irregular: 31, *a*; 80, 2.  
**Compound Tenses**: 54-56; 73; 75.  
**Conditional**: 54, 2; 76; 77.  
    Contracted: 65; 66, 1.  
**Conjugation**: 53-68; 92.  
    First: 59.  
    Second: 60.  
    Third: 60.  
    Fourth: 61.  
    Variations: 63; 67, *a*, *b*, *c*.  
    Irregular verbs: 64-68; 92.  
    Auxiliary verbs: 53-57.  
    Compound tenses: 54, 3; 55-56.  
    Compound verbs: 68, *a*; 93.

**Conjunctions:** 78.

With subjunctive: 77; 78, *a, b*.

**Consonants:** 4-6.

**Contraction:** 12; 65; 66, 1.

**Da:** 79, *c, f, g*.

**Dates:** 38, *b*; 39, *b*.

**Definite Article:** 10-13.

Form: 10-12.

Use: 12, *a*; 13.

**Di:** 12; 17; 79, *b, 3, f, h, j*.

**Diminutives:** 35-37.

**Do:** 54, *c*.

**Double Letters:** 6.

**E (letter):** 3.

**E (conjunction):** 78; 78, *c*.

**Essere:** 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3; 54, *a, d*.

**For:** 79, *c*.

**Fractions:** 39, *c*.

**Future:** 54, 2; 74; 77.

Contracted: 65; 66, 1.

**Gender:** 18-21; 26; 28.

**Grande:** 29, *c*.

**Have:** 53, *b*; 54, 3; 54, *b, h*; 57, *a*.

**Here:** 84.

**I (letter):** 2.

**I (euphonic):** 79; 81.

**Imperative:** 72; 77, *a*.

**Imperfect:** 54, *d, e*; 63; 63, *b*; 75.

Form: 63; 63, *b*.

Use: 54, *d, e*; 75.

**Impersonal Verbs:** 51, 2; 51, *h*.

**Indefinite Article:** 14-16.

Form: 14-15.

Use: 16.

**Infinitive:** 48, *b*; 58; 69-72.

Contracted: 65.

**Interrogation:** see **Questions**.

**Isaismo** (suffix): 35, *a*.

**It:** 47; 51; 51, 2; 51, *h*.

**Letters:** 1.

**May:** see **Modal Auxiliaries**.

**Modal Auxiliaries:** 57.

**Moods:** 57; 69-77; 78, *a*.

Conditional: 54, 2; 65; 66, 1;

76; 77.

Imperative: 72; 77, *a*.

Infinitive: 48, *b*; 58; 65; 69-72.

Participle: 54, *a, b*; 62; 69-71.

Subjunctive: 77; 78, *a*.

**Must:** see **Modal Auxiliaries**.

**Myself**, **thysself**, etc.: 47, 2; 51, *c*.

**Ne** (adv.): 47, *a*; 48, *e*; 49, *a*; 56, *b, 2*.

**Ne** (pron.): 47, 3; 48; 49; 88; 89.

**Neuter Verbs:** 54, 3; 56, *a*.

**Never:** 83.

**Non:** 80, 1; 81; 91, *a*.

**Not:** 80, 1; 81.

**Nouns:** 17-25.

Gender: 18-21.

Number: 22-25.

**Number:** 22-25; 29.

**Numerals:** 38-40.

Cardinal: 38.

Ordinal: 39.

**O (letter):** 3.

**O** (conjunction): 78; 78, *c*.

**One** (indefinite): 54, *g*; 86.

**Only:** 82.

**Open Vowels:** 3; 7.

**Ought:** see **Modal Auxiliaries**.

- Participle:** 54, *a, b*; 62; 69-71.  
 Past: 54, *a, b*; 71, *c*.  
 Present: 62; 69-71.
- Partitive Genitive:** 12, *a*; 88; 89.
- Passive:** 54, 1; 54, *f, g*; 56, *c*.
- Perfect Tenses:** 54, 3; 55-56;  
 73.
- Personal Pronouns:** 46-52.  
 Conjunctive: 47-50.  
 Form: 47; 48, *b, d*; 50;  
 52, 1.  
 Position: 48; 49.  
 Disjunctive: 51-52.  
 Omission: 51, 2; 51, *h*.  
 Use: 51; 51, 1; 51, *a, b, h*.
- Plural:** 22-25; 29.  
 Irregular, 23, *d*; 25.  
 Words in *-co* and *-go*: 23, *c*.
- Possessive:** 17; 45; 52, 1.
- Prepositions:** 79.  
*Da*: 79, *c, f, g*.  
*To*: 79, *a, b*.
- Present:** 73; 74.
- Preterite:** 75.
- Preterite Perfect:** 75.
- Pronouns:** 41-52; 86-91.  
 Demonstrative: 42.  
 Indefinite: 86-91.  
 Interrogative: 43.  
 Personal: see **Personal Pronouns**.  
 Possessive: 45.  
 Reciprocal: see **Reciprocal**.  
 Reflexive: see **Reflexive**.  
 Relative: 44.
- Pronunciation:** 1-8.
- Qualche:** 29, *b*; 89.
- Questions:** 43; 51, 2; 77, *f, g*;  
 81, *a*.
- Reciprocal pronouns and verbs:**  
 47, 2; 49; 50; 51, *f*; 52,  
 1; 56, *b*.
- Reflexive Pronouns:** 47, 2; 49;  
 50; 51, 3; 52; 54, *g*; 56,  
*b*; 86.
- Reflexive Verbs:** 49; 56, *b*.
- Santo:** 29, *c*.
- Shall:** 54, 2; 57.
- Should:** 54, 2; 57; 76; 77.
- Si:** 47-50; 52; 54, *g*; 56, *b*; 86.
- Some:** 89.
- Spelling:** 1-8.
- Subjunctive:** 77; 78, *a*.
- Suffixes:** 35-37.
- Syllables:** 8.
- Tenses:** 54, 2, 3; 55; 56; 69-77.  
 Compound: 54, 3; 55; 56; 73.  
 Future: 54, 2; 74.  
 Imperfect: 54, *d, e*; 63; 63, *b*;  
 75.  
 Present: 73; 74.  
 Preterite: 75.
- Than:** 33.
- There:** 84.
- Time:** 38, *c*.
- To:** 79, *a, b*.
- U (letter):** 2.
- Verbs:** 53-77; 92; 93.  
 Auxiliary verbs: see **Auxiliary Verbs**.  
 Conjugation: see **Conjugation**.  
 Lists of irregular verbs: 92; 93.  
 According to conjugation:  
 92.  
 Alphabetical: 93.



**Moods and tenses:** see **Moods and Tenses.**

**Regular verbs:** 55-56; 59-63.

**Irregular verbs:** 64-68; 92.

**Regular parts:** 66.

**Compound verbs:** 68, *a*; 93.

**Old forms:** 63, *a, b, c, d*;  
67, *a, b, c.*

**Vi (adv.):** 47, *a*; 48, *e*; 49, *a*; 84.

**Vowels:** 2-3.

**Whatever:** 44, *c.*

**Whoever:** 44, *c.*

**Will:** 54, 2; 57.

**Would:** 54, 2; 54, *e*; 76; 77.

**You:** 52.

## MODERN LANGUAGES.

---

*"As many languages as a man knows, so many times is he a man."*

---

### *Short German Grammar for Colleges and*

*High Schools.* By E. S. SHELDON, Assistant Professor of Romance Philology, Harvard University. 5¼ by 7½. Cloth. vi + 103 pages. Price by mail, 65 cts.; Introduction price, 60 cts.; Allowance for old book, 10 cts.

THIS book is intended for students who wish to learn as rapidly as possible to read German, though they may not care to speak the language till later, if at all. It is especially adapted to the use of those who have already studied another language,—for example, Latin,—and to college classes who are beginning the study of German, and who need an elementary book giving grammar enough for all who do not wish to make a specialty of this language.

Some of its characteristic features are:—

1. Its brevity, and the simple and clear language employed throughout. Many details have been omitted in order not to encumber the learner with rules and exceptions, which can be best learned by practice in reading and writing. Attention is called, for example, to the sections on Gender, the Declension of Nouns, the uses of the Auxiliary Verbs, Separable and Inseparable Prefixes, etc.
2. The Declension of Adjectives, one of the most difficult subjects for the student to master, is presented in a brief and clear form, so as to be made as easy as it can be.
3. The sections on Composition and Derivation of Words, give, briefly, information which greatly facilitates reading. They should be learned and fixed in the mind largely by practice in reading at sight.
4. In the treatment of the Arrangement of Words, the rules are given gradually, as occasion demands, on account of the differences between English and German, and afterwards a brief but unusually full summary is given, for convenient reference.

5. In the English-German Vocabulary, to which special attention is called, the gender and the declension of the German nouns are given to save reference to the German Vocabulary, or to a Lexicon.

6. Peculiar constructions, relating to the uses of cases, moods, and tenses, which cannot well be learned except in connection with reading lessons, are given separately, in order to shorten the preliminary study of grammar. After finishing the first fifty or sixty pages of the grammar, the student can begin reading easy prose. Indeed, experience shows that college students can profitably do this after one or two lessons.

7. The exercises for translation, from and into German, are sufficient to make plain the principles of grammar, and fix the forms of declension and conjugation. The words used are those only which are of frequent occurrence in both English and German. Variations of these exercises, and additional exercises of the same kind, can easily be given by any teacher, if further practice is desired for his pupils.

#### OPINIONS OF TEACHERS OF GERMAN.

**Irving J. Manatt, Prof. of Mod. Langs., Marietta Coll., O.:** I can say, after going over every page of it carefully in the class-room, that it is admirably adapted to use as an elementary or first course grammar. There is, I conceive, a distinct advantage in putting into the beginner's hands a book that must be taken whole. It gives the shirk less leeway, and affords more satisfaction to the faithful student. But it requires thorough knowledge and sound judgment to say what shall go into such a book, and what shall be left out. Mr. Sheldon, I think, has hit the mean. I find nothing in the book that I would omit, and miss very few things that I would supply.

**Joseph Milliken, formerly Prof. of Mod. Langs., Ohio State Univ.:** There is nothing in English at all equal to it, of anything like the same scope. In plan, in clearness and accuracy of statement, in aptness of illustration, and in its rare, wise *silence* about many things, I think it altogether the best book for high schools and the average college course in German

I have ever seen, and my acquaintance with American and English-German grammars is painfully extensive.

**H. E. Ohlen, Prof. of German, Drury Coll., Mo.:** I should recommend it to all students of German who wish to obtain the greatest facility of translation in the shortest time possible.

**W. H. Appleton, Prof. of Mod. Langs., Swarthmore Coll.:** It has very great merits, and is admirably adapted for the purpose designed. The account of the German pronunciation seems to me the briefest, and at the same time *the best*, I have ever seen anywhere.

**Wm. H. Rosenstengel, Prof. of German, Univ. of Wis.:** We would suggest to the high schools fitting for this University the use of Sheldon's Short German Grammar. We finished this book in eight weeks. High schools can easily finish it in two terms with one recitation a day.

*Meissner's German Grammar.*

---

By A. L. MEISSNER, M.A., Ph.D., D.Lit., Professor of Modern Languages in Queen's College, Belfast. Adapted for use in American schools and colleges by EDWARD S. JOYNES, Professor of Modern Languages, South Carolina College, Columbia, aided by the author and other eminent scholars. 5¼ by 7½ inches. Cloth. oo + 000 pages. Price by mail, \$0.00; Introduction price, \$0.00.

**I**N this Grammar the author has embodied the plan he has found most convenient and successful in his own practice as a teacher. This plan is briefly as follows:—

The pupil begins with learning and practising simultaneously the declension of substantives and the indicative of the verb *sein*; he next learns the declension and comparison of adjectives, together with the indicative of the verb *haben*. The conditional, subjunctive, and participles of *haben* and *sein*, together with the verb *werden*, are learned in combination with the prepositions. The possessive, demonstrative, and interrogative pronouns are distributed among the lessons on the weak verb. Next follow the strong verbs, the lighter lessons on which are weighted by the relative and indefinite pronouns and the spurious prepositions. After this follow the lessons on the compound verbs and the remaining parts of speech. The most elementary rules of syntax are introduced in the lessons on the compound tenses, the relative pronoun, and the conjunction, so that by the time the student has completed these lessons he has absolved all that is absolutely necessary for entering on the study of syntax.

As one of the chief difficulties of German is its great vocabulary and the facility with which new derivatives and compounds are formed, a series of exercises on the composition and derivation of words is introduced. This is the first attempt, in any grammar, to illustrate the chapter by exercises.

The new official spelling has been adopted throughout the book; but as the student for many years to come must necessarily meet with many books printed in the old spelling, both forms will be indicated.

A chapter, with graded exercises, on German prose composition, is added at the end of the book.

In the American edition the treatment of many topics has been simplified and condensed; new chapters added on several topics, and vocabularies added covering every word in all the exercises, and also a list of irregular verbs.

[*In preparation.*]

## Colloquial Exercises and Select German

*Reader.* By WILLIAM DEUTSCH, of the St. Louis High School. 5¼ by 7½ inches. Cloth. xiii + 274 pages. Price by mail, \$1.00; Introduction price, 90 cts.; Allowance for old book in use, 30 cts.

THIS book is intended for the use of students who wish to speak, as well as to read, German. It is based on the theory that "little is gained by beginning with the study of grammar, and that the most successful method is the natural one by which a child learns to speak his own language; viz., by practice in conversation." It may be used with or without a grammar. The teacher may choose his own method of imparting instruction. It contains one hundred select stories, fairy tales, extracts from history and from standard novels, and twelve standard poems, all accompanied by copious English notes, well adapted to the explanation of all the difficulties in the text.

The selections are modern, idiomatic, reputable, furnishing at once the vocabulary of literature, of business, and of social life. They are well graded, and the colloquial exercises following each are made up of groups of logically connected words and phrases adapted to conversation upon the topic given. It is assumed that the student is to maintain his part in the conversation, and to put in practice what he has learned from the selections. The table of peculiar phrases and idioms, the list of irregular verbs, and the alphabetical vocabulary to the entire work, will greatly facilitate the progress of the class. All the work given has been thoroughly tested in the class-room. In fact, the book is but the outgrowth of many years of schoolroom work by one of the most successful teachers of German in the country. That the author's work is duly appreciated, appears from the use of the book in many of our leading schools and colleges, as well as from the following

### TESTIMONIALS.

**Frederick Lutz**, *recent Instructor in German, Harvard Univ., now Prof. of German, Albion Coll., Mich.*: After having used it at Harvard for nearly one year, I can *conscientiously* say that it is an *excellent* book, well adapted to beginners. It deserves a large sale.

**Henry Johnson**, *Prof. of Modern Languages, Bowdoin Coll.*: Use in the

class-room has proved to me the excellence of the book. The abundant examples of every-day German, and especially the grouping of logically connected words and phrases in its numerous vocabularies, are features that must commend it to any teacher of beginners. The author must be a first-rate teacher himself, and I trust that his work will find the constantly increasing sale it deserves. (*April 3, 1885.*)

---

*Boisen's Preparatory Book of German Prose.*

---

Containing the best German Tales, Graded and Adapted to the Use of Beginners, with Copious Notes, bound separately, and also with the text. By HERMANN B. BOISEN, A.M. 5¼ by 7½ inches. Cloth. vii + 216 + 84 pages. Price by mail, \$1.10; Introduction price, \$1.00. Notes and text separate at same price as when bound together.

THIS volume is intended to furnish the learner with material for *copious* reading of easy, correct, and interesting prose. The book is based upon the assumption that reading, to be profitable, must be copious, and that no unnecessary obstacles should be permitted to impede the progress of the beginner. In making the selections, the main requisite for the end proposed, *an easy style*, has been kept steadily in view; and in the first part of the book the author has rendered it still more easy by frequent alterations in construction and expression, due care being had not to mar the charm of the original. The book, with one exception, contains only selections complete in themselves, including the best tales of Bechstein, Grimm, Andersen, Hauff, Hebel, Engel, Wildermuth, Jean Paul, some of the "Musikalische Märchen," by Elise Polko, and selections from Becker's charming "Tales of Antiquity"; but not one of the pieces has been taken for the sake of its author, the selection having been made solely upon the ground of fitness for the purpose. This purpose demands judicious gradation of difficulties, and selections that will stimulate curiosity by *variety*, encourage diligence by *facility*, and reward application by *pleasure*. As for style, it is sufficient that they should strictly conform to the grammar and genius of the language; and, as for subject-matter, it is better that it should be a little below the learner's age and understanding than above it, so that the difficulties arising from the matter may not turn his attention aside from the language.

The notes are intended to supersede in a great measure the time-wasting drudgery of reference to a dictionary, but they are, for the most part, merely *suggestive*, throwing the burden of work upon the student: some, in the nature of a concordance, calling the student's attention to passages where a given word or phrase has occurred before; others recalling kindred or synonymous words; others, again, leading him to discover for himself the precise meaning of a word by calling his attention to its constituent elements. The notes are also published in a separate pamphlet, thus obviating both the inconven-

ience of frequent reference to the end of the book, and the temptation of deriving assistance from them during recitations, which is a serious objection to foot-notes.

### OPINIONS OF TEACHERS OF GERMAN.

**Hermann Huss, Prof. of German, Princeton Coll.:** I have been using it in the class-room with mature students, though beginners in the study of German, and it gives me a great deal of satisfaction. The selection of classical prose is tasteful and judicious, because progressive and suitable for the class-room. But the chief merit of the book lies in the *notes*, which are *abundant* enough to satisfy the beginner even at a very early stage; *suggestive* enough to keep the mental activities of the student constantly on the alert; and *educational* enough to refuse a gratuitous outfit to the lazy, while assuring reward to the honest labor of the industrious. (April 11, 1883.)

**Charles F. Smith, Prof. of Mod. Lang., Vanderbilt Univ.:** I am delighted with it. I fully agree with the author as to the evil of introducing beginners at once into the masters of thought and style in German, and I have long felt the want of a collection of easy and interesting pieces of such length as to get beginners interested in the subject-matter of each piece, and easy enough to prevent the first few weeks in German from being mere drudgery. Prof. Boisen has given us such a collection, made with rare taste and judgment. The selections must be interesting to old and young alike. The plan of the notes is admirable. It will be easy to enkindle in the student enthusiasm for a subject in which he has, as by this method, such constant opportunity of testing the surety of his acquisitions, and can see that each day is adding to his store of words and power over the language. A recitation, conducted on the plan of these notes, must be easy, interesting, and full of life.

I am quite enthusiastic over the book, and shall introduce it next term. The print is beautiful, far surpassing that of any German text-book I have seen published in America.

**Alfred Hennequin, Dept. of Mod. Lang. and Lit., Univ. of Mich., Author of a Series of French Text-Books, etc.:** I am pleased to say that I consider this small book superior, in every respect, to other works of the same nature. The selections are especially good, and the notes contain much valuable information, which is totally lacking in most of the books prepared for beginners. (Aug. 28, 1883.)

**Samuel Garner, Prof. of Modern Languages, University of Indiana:** Prof. Boisen's method agrees so thoroughly with my own views, both as a learner and as a teacher, that I cannot too highly commend it. The notes are admirably clear and concise. I am so well pleased with the whole make-up of the book that I shall use it at once for my elementary classes.

**Charles P. Otis, Prof. of German, Institute of Technology, Boston:** As you know, I have used this book for the past two years, and I have found it *very satisfactory*.

**T. B. Lindsay, Prof. in Boston Univ., Mass.:** It fills a long-felt void. It is just the book that I have been looking for for several years. (April 25, 1883.)

**A. H. Mixer, Prof. of Mod. Lang., Univ. of Rochester, N. Y.:** It answers my idea of an elementary reader better than any I have yet seen. I shall use it and recommend it.

## *Grimm's Märchen.*

Selected and edited, with English Notes, Glossaries, and a Grammatical Appendix, by W. H. VAN DER SMISSEN, M.A., Lecturer on German in University College, Toronto. 5¼ by 7½ inches. xii + 190 pages. Cloth. Price by mail, 80 cents. Introduction price, 75 cents.

The eight tales selected for this edition are: "Aschenputtel," "Rotkäppchen," "Dornröschen," "Der treue Johannes," "Brüderchen und Schwesterchen," "König Drosselbart," "Sneewittchen," "Hans im Glück."

THE charming simplicity of diction and thought in these tales renders them peculiarly fit for beginners to read. Colloquialisms and idioms, such as are found here in great abundance, are indispensable to the student of the language; and the sooner they are acquired, the better.

The Notes are very full, and in them more attention than usual is paid to the very important subject of *the construction of sentences* in German, a subject frequently neglected or postponed until the pupil is supposed to be ripe enough to begin translating from English into German. This delay is, in the editor's opinion, a great mistake. The pupil should, in this branch of discipline, be drilled early and drilled often, and should be made to dissect and analyze each sentence, as he reads, until he is thoroughly proficient in this regard. Next to the classical languages, no language affords so favorable an exercise-ground for this purpose as the German.

It is believed that no apology is required for the frequent repetition of grammatical rules and axioms contained in the Notes, since repetition is one of the most effectual modes of impressing truths upon the mind of the learner.

The Glossary has been prepared with unusual care, and is sufficient for the book. Words, about the pronunciation of which there could be any doubt, are properly marked. The principal parts of the verbs are given in full. In addition to the meanings and synonyms, many grammatical remarks are introduced, so that the pupil is spared the trouble of consulting a grammar or a lexicon.

The Appendix contains full sets of the most concise rules (illustrated by examples) for the construction of German sentences, and for the declension of adjectives.

The tales have been printed in the Roman character, partly to accustom the pupil to the appearance of German words in this character, and partly for the sake of the pupils' eyes.



## *Hauff's Das Kalte Herz.*

Edited, with Notes, Vocabulary, and a Grammatical Appendix, by W. H. VAN DER SMISSEN, Lecturer on German in University College, Toronto. 5¼ by 7½ inches. viii + 184 pages. Cloth. Price by mail, 80 cents. Introduction price, 75 cents.

ENCOURAGED by the success which has attended the issue of the *Grimm's Märchen*, the publishers present this edition of HAUFF'S *DAS KALTE HERZ*, edited in accordance with the same principles that were followed in preparing the *Grimm*.

The many kindly notices of the latter, from teachers of German in Canada and the United States, are good evidence that the HAUFF has been unusually well adapted to the use of the student. Nowhere are sound scholarship and minute accuracy more necessary than in a work intended for elementary pupils; and nowhere, it may perhaps be added, has such work been more rare hitherto than in school-books in German.

The orthography adopted in the *Grimm* has been adhered to in the present volume. The Roman characters, so generally welcomed, have also been retained. In the Notes and Vocabulary much attention is given to accentuation and fulness of grammatical information.

W. J. Martin, *Prof. of Modern Languages, Vincennes Univ., Ind.*: It is an admirable work, making prominent the idiom of the language, supplying an excellent practical vocabulary, adopting a good orthography, and being well arranged for obtaining forms. (Feb. 19, 1887.)

P. B. Burnet, *Instr. in German, Ind. State Univ., Bloomington*: It is surely a most suitable text-book to follow the Grimm. There seems to be neither too much nor too little in the notes. It is well for a text-book to have a vocabulary that covers the necessary ground and no more. I shall order it right away. (Jan. 13, 1887.)

G. H. Horswell, *Prof. of German, Northwestern Univ. Preparatory School, Evanston, Ill.*: It is prepared with the

same critical scholarship and judicious annotation as the same editor's edition of Grimm. I shall use it in my class next term. (Nov. 24, 1886.)

Mrs. Elise M. Traut, *Instr. in German in the Amherst Summer School of Languages*: I find it well suited for the work I do in Amherst. I expect, also, to make use of it in some of my classes next winter. (May 5, 1887.)

The Academy, *Syracuse, N.Y.*: The notes are ample for the explanation of all difficulties, and seem to us unusually well prepared. The vocabulary is made expressly for the story, and undertakes the by no means easy task of indicating the primary accent of each word, and, in some cases, the secondary, also. It is a model of good taste in typography, press work, and general make up. (December, 1886.)

*Deutsche Novellenbibliothek.*

---

German Novellettes. Selected and annotated by DR. WILHELM BERNHARDT, of the Washington (D.C.) High School. Vol. I. 5 by 7 inches. x + 182 pages. Cloth. Price by mail, 80 cents. Introduction price, 75 cents.

THE student of a language is most readily familiarized with its spirit by copious and rapid reading. This should therefore follow promptly upon the mastering of its elements. What to read, however, is a question often as perplexing as it is important. The difficulty of finding publications entirely adapted to this idea has suggested the compilation of the present volume. The contents of those volumes which were available were either lacking in interest to American readers, or so lengthy as to necessitate wearisome effort on the part of the student before reaching the point of the story, or they were deficient in the explanatory notes necessary to render the contents fully intelligible.

This book is intended to meet these various objections. It contains only short stories, from the best contemporary German novelists. The selections have been made with reference to simplicity of style, wealth of phraseology, and elegance of diction; and in no instance is the patience of the reader overtaxed by lack of interest in the story. Special attention has been given to the character of the notes. The etymological relations of German and English are treated fully, illustrating the formation of German words. Notes upon Art, Science, History, and Literature are liberally provided, thus increasing the interest of the student. The fact that these notes are in the German language serves the double purpose of making the notes themselves a study of German Composition, and also of supplying those teachers, who desire to combine conversational exercises and reading, with correct and available models of German conversation.

The following stories are given in this volume:—

- (1) "Am heiligen Abend" (On Christmas Eve), von Helene Stökl.
- (2) "Mein erster Patient" (My First Patient), von Marc. Boyen.
- (3) "Der Wilddieb" (The Poacher), von E. Werner.
- (4) "Ein Frühlingstraum" (A Spring Revery), von E. Juncker.
- (5) "Die schwarze Dame" (The Lady in Black), von A. C. Wiesner.

## *Phosphorus Hollunder.*

Novelle by L. v. FRANÇOIS, from Spemann's collection, arranged and adapted to use in schools, with explanatory notes by OSCAR FAULHABER, Ph.D., Professor of Modern Languages in Phillips Exeter Academy, N.H. Paper. 80 pages. Introduction price, 25 cents.

## *Course in Scientific German.*

Prepared by H. B. HODGES, Instructor in Chemistry and German in Harvard University. With Vocabulary.  $5\frac{1}{4}$  by  $7\frac{1}{2}$  inches. Cloth. ix + 103 + 69 pages. Price by mail, \$1.10; Introduction price, \$1.00.

THIS book is designed to aid English and American students of science in the acquirement of such a knowledge of German as will enable them to read with ease the scientific literature of Germany.

It assumes that the student has some knowledge of the general principles of the language, and some readiness in reading easy German prose.

The book begins with exercises in German and English, the sentences being carefully selected and arranged from text-books on Physics, Chemistry, Mineralogy, and Botany.

The second part consists of a collection of articles on scientific subjects of general interest, adapted from the writings of the first scientific men of Germany.

A Vocabulary of scientific terms and phrases — German-English and English-German — completes the work.

Such care has been taken in the arrangement of the sentences and in the choice of essays, that a student may begin this book without having had any scientific training, and become familiar with the main principles of the natural sciences at the same time that he is mastering the German.

Following the custom now observed almost universally in Germany in printing scientific works, ordinary Roman type has been used throughout this book.

Albert C. Hale, *Pres. of State School of Mines, Golden, Col.*: I became immediately interested in it, and determined to try it with our classes in the School of Mines. We have not only placed it on trial, but have adopted it as a text-book, and I am happy to say that I have never

been better pleased with any text-book we have used in this institution. It meets our wants completely in its particular sphere, and we expect that our students will have acquired a good foundation for scientific reading in German after they have become sufficiently familiar with

the grammar, and are prepared for a thorough examination in the course in scientific German. (Feb. 19, 1883.)

**J. Woodbridge Davis**, *Prin. of School of Mines Preparatory School, New York*: I am much pleased with it, and shall in all probability introduce it. (April 22, 1886.)

**C. H. Stockmann**, *Prof. of German, Iowa Agricultural Coll.*: It is a book well adapted for use in connection

with the natural method. We shall use it next term. (April 29, 1886.)

**W. H. Fraser**, *Master of French and German, Upper Canada Coll., Toronto, Ont.*: In my opinion, a student of natural science, even one who knows ordinary German, would save much time and effort, and gain a great deal of comfort, by working through this little book before attempting a course of reading in German scientific literature. (May 7, 1886.)

## Schiller's Ballads.

Edited, with an Introduction, Notes, and a Vocabulary (also an edition without Vocabulary), by HENRY JOHNSON, Ph.D. (Berlin), Longfellow Professor of Modern Languages in Bowdoin College. 4¾ by 7 inches. Cloth. 000 pages. Price by mail, \$0.00; Introduction price, \$0.00.

THE Introduction deals briefly with the relation of the ballads to Schiller's life and works. It contains, also, by way of illustration, selections from the best German criticism of the poems.

The text is based on that of Goedeke's critical (*historischkritische*) edition of Schiller's poems, Cotta, Stuttgart, 1871. The orthography followed is that prescribed by the present German government.

The Notes give the source of each ballad, in the words of Schiller's authorities, as far as is practical. They include also every variant appearing in the texts published in Schiller's lifetime. They have been written also with the constant purpose of assisting in the study of the poems considered as literary masterpieces.

The Vocabulary is etymological to the extent that cognate modern English words are indicated by full-faced type. It has some new features in respect to arrangement and fullness which, it is hoped, will commend themselves to the teacher. Special completeness has been aimed at in view of the needs of such as use it in translation into German of prose synopses of the poems.

This edition will contain the following ballads: "Der Taucher," "Der Handschuh," "Der Ring des Polykrates," "Ritter Toggenburg," "Die Kraniche des Ibykus," "Der Gang nach dem Eisenhammer," "Der Kampf mit dem Drachen," "Die Bürgschaft," "Das Eleusische Fest," "Hero und Leander," "Kassandra," "Der Graf von Habsburg," "Das Siegesfest," "Der Alpenjäger." [Ready soon.]

---

*A Practical Method for Learning Spanish,*

---

in Accordance with Ybarra's System of Teaching Modern Languages. By GEN. A. YBARRA, Professor in the Department of Modern Languages in Martha's Vineyard Summer Institute. 5¼ by 7½ inches. Cloth. 319 pages. Price by mail, \$1.30; Introduction price, \$1.20.

**T**HIS book is intended for those who wish to understand and to speak the language in a short time, and without entering into the details of grammatical construction, etc., etc. But it will enable the student who follows it to learn afterwards, without the aid of a teacher, any Spanish Grammar written in that language.

It has had a wide success in North and South America and in Europe, and has proved of great value to many travellers in Spanish-speaking countries. The president, and several members of the Royal Spanish Academy, recommend it as a text-book, as may be seen by the following testimonials.

The volume is as much used for those who speak Spanish and wish to learn English, as for those who speak English and wish to learn the Spanish, and is as largely sold for that purpose.

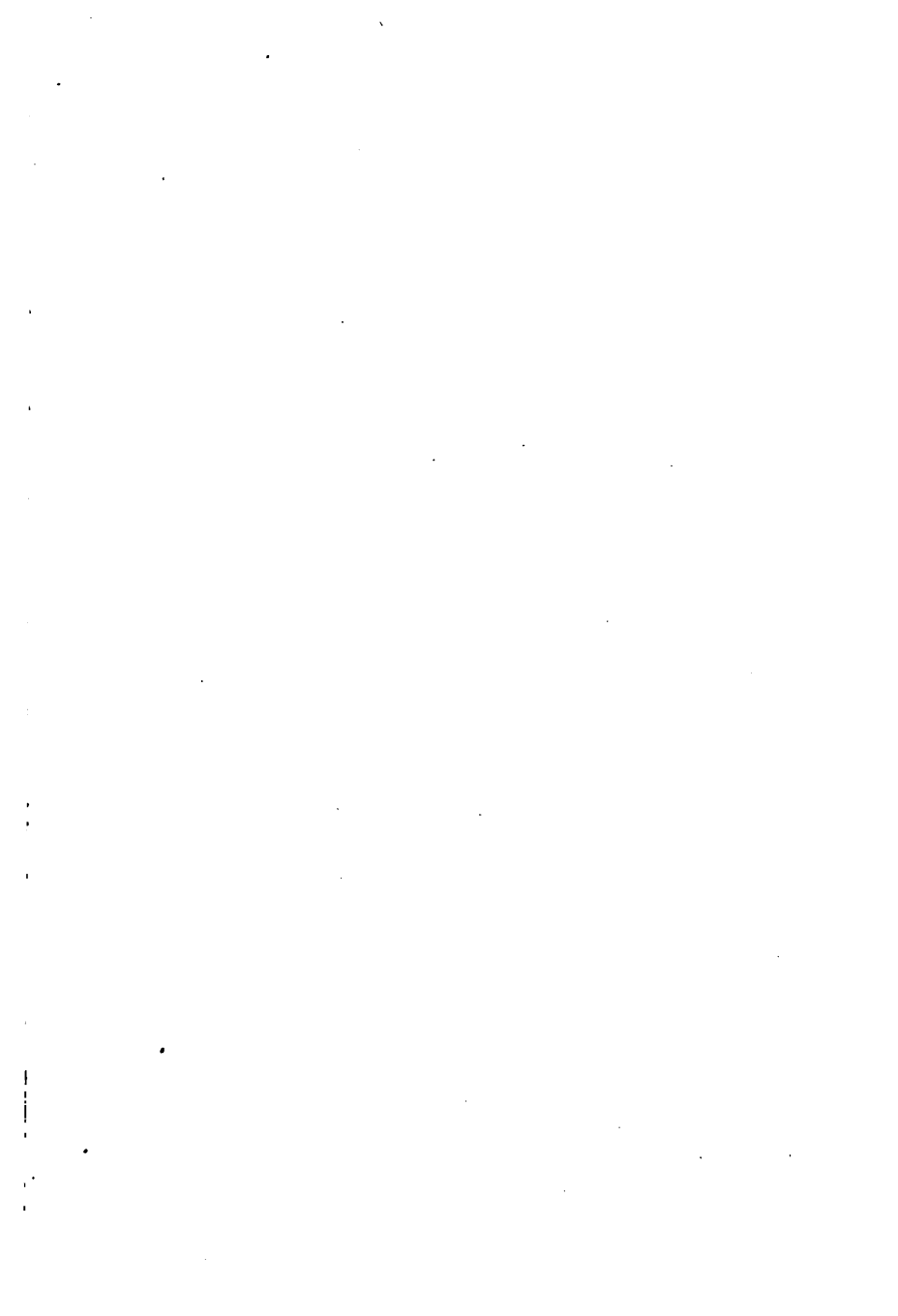
Each lesson is divided into three parts. The first part is made up of a vocabulary of words and phrases to be committed to memory; the second part is a reading exercise; and the third part is a practical conversation in application of what has been learned. The book is of great value to those who are obliged to learn the language without a teacher.

It is the author's present purpose to prepare soon a similar book for French, and another for Italian.

*We give below a few of the many testimonials which have come to us from the various countries in which the Ybarra Method is used:—*

William Wells, *Prof. of Modern Languages, Union College, Schenectady, N.Y.*: I have listened with much pleasure to the teaching of General Ybarra, have admired his system of teaching modern languages, and seen the success of his work in his classes. I shall be happy to introduce his book to my pupils in that language. (August, 1883.)

Alfred Hennequin, *Department of Modern Languages, Univ. of Michigan*: It is not based on any known method, but derives its excellence from the ability as a teacher and the broad scholarship of the author. It is thoroughly practical. The work will be used by me in the University of Michigan. (Aug. 25, 1883.)





This book should be returned to  
the Library on or before the last date  
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred  
by retaining it beyond the specified  
time.

Please return promptly.

~~DEC 13 1935~~

~~JUL 30 1936~~

~~JUL APR -4 1938~~



